



© Chemical Publishing Co., Inc.  
All rights reserved.

This title may be purchased  
at the following websites:

<http://www.chemical-publishing.com>

<http://www.chemicalpublishing.net>

## Harry's Cosmeticology

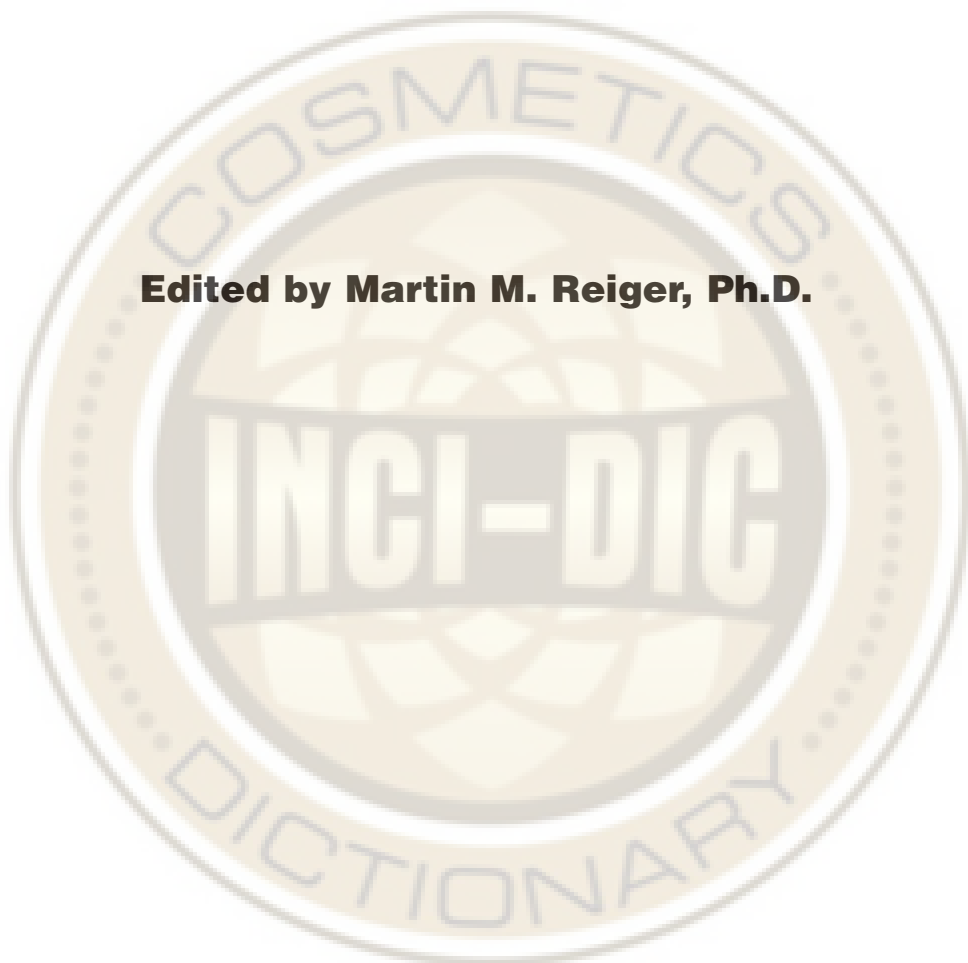




# Harry's Cosmeticology

**Eighth Edition**

**Edited by Martin M. Reiger, Ph.D.**



**Chemical Publishing Co., Inc.**



Chemical Publishing Co., Inc., 743 Western Avenue, Gloucester, MA 01930  
www.chemical-publishing.com  
www.chemicalpublishing.net

© 2000, by Chemical Publishing Co., Inc.  
All rights reserved. 8th edition, 2000

This book is protected by copyright. No part of it may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means; electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN 0-8206-0372-4

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Harry, Ralph Gordon, 1908-  
[Cosmeticology]

Harry's cosmeticology-8th ed. Volume 1/edited by Martin M. Rieger.  
p.cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8206-0372-4

1. Cosmetics. I. Title: Cosmeticology. II. Rieger, Martin, M., 1920- III. Title.

TP983 H32 2000

668'.55-dc21

00-035900

Made in the United States of America



# Contents

|                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Foreword                          | vii  |
| List of Contributors by Chapter   | x    |
| Alphabetical List of Contributors | xi   |
| Chapter Contributors              | xiii |

## PART ONE: THE SUBSTRATES 1

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 1 Skin                                    | 3  |
| 2 The Hair                                | 39 |
| 3 The Nails                               | 71 |
| 4 Anatomy and Physiology of Ocular Tissue | 79 |
| 5 The Mouth and Oral Care                 | 87 |

## PART TWO: FORMULATION APPROACHES AND REQUIREMENTS 109

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 6 Fundamentals of Cosmetic Product Development: Getting Started | 111 |
| 7 Regulatory Requirements for Cosmetic Products                 | 129 |
| 8 Intellectual Property Issues: Patents and Trade Secrets       | 175 |

## PART THREE: COMMON INGREDIENTS AND PROCESSES 185

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 9 Surfactants                     | 187 |
| 10 Cosmetic Emulsification        | 211 |
| 11 Rheological Additives          | 235 |
| 12 Antioxidants                   | 247 |
| 13 Moisturizers and Humectants    | 261 |
| 14 Preservation                   | 273 |
| 15 Use of Botanicals in Cosmetics | 305 |

v





|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 16 Specialty Lipids   | 323 |
| 17 Aerosol Technology   | 333 |
| <br>  |     |
| PART FOUR: FORMULATION AND PERFORMANCE                        | 349 |
| <br>  |     |
| 18 Skin Care Products   | 351 |
| 19 Miscellaneous Skin Care Products: Skin Bleaches and Others | 393 |
| 20 Sunscreens   | 415 |
| 21 Antiperspirants and Deodorants                             | 437 |
| 22 Antiacne and Oily Skin Products                            | 459 |
| 23 Face, Body and Hair Masks and Scrubs                       | 471 |
| 24 Skin Cleansing Products                                    | 485 |
| 25 Shaving Preparations                                       | 501 |
| 26 Color Cosmetics  | 523 |
| 27 Nail Polishes  | 573 |
| 28 Specialty Nail Products                                    | 589 |
| 29 Shampoos   | 601 |
| 30 Hair Setting Products                                      | 635 |
| 31 Hair Colorants   | 669 |
| 32 Permanent Waving, Hair Straightening and Depilatories      | 695 |
| 33 Oral Care Products   | 725 |
| 34 Safety and Performance                                     | 755 |
| <br>  |     |
| PART FIVE: PRODUCTION   | 785 |
| <br>  |     |
| 35 The Manufacture of Cosmetics                               | 787 |
| 36 Packaging  | 875 |
| 37 Stability  | 889 |
| <br>  |     |
| Index   | 901 |



# Foreword

Since its first edition *Harry's Cosmeticology* has been a highly respected text for cosmetic scientists and others concerned with skin, hair, and nail health and appearance. This, the eighth edition, continues this tradition, although the current and ever-changing status of the cosmetic industry has created the need for extensive changes. The driving forces for this required updating to include the spectacular advances in biology and dermatology as well as the steady progress in formulation technology. These innovations are reflected in this modernized and comprehensive revision of *Harry's*. The editor has attempted to present the rationale for currently practiced product concepts and to provide a scientifically sound basis for future product innovations. One of the major problems for compounders is the need to deal with the names of thousands of trademarked ingredients available for formulation. In this current edition, this complication was avoided by eliminating trade names and replacing them with the internationally accepted INCI terminology.

The use of the *INCI Dictionary* also allowed elimination of almost all chemical structures in this book. The text is deliberately slanted to alert readers to some of the uncertainties in cosmetic formulation. In addition, an effort was made to provide readers with sufficient background to draw their own conclusions about some of the dogmas that have persisted in the industry for years. The book avoids—as much as possible—the hype and pseudoscience that surround the frequently undocumented biological activity of many topically applied cosmetic ingredients. Citations of the original literature intended to substantiate the validity of specific and widely accepted assertions have been routinely eliminated. References were selected to allow further study by interested readers. The listings of recommended reading are intended to provide access to the classic information that forms the foundation of cosmetic science. Complete titles are included to facilitate the reader's selection of pertinent information.

The preparation of this edition of *Harry's* required the participation of many experts who contributed extensively to almost all chapters. The work of these

## viii Foreword

---

contributors is gratefully acknowledged, and their names are listed below. I also wish to acknowledge the help of my wife, Audrey, who contributed unselfishly to the completion of the manuscript. In addition, the guidance provided by the staff of Chemical Publishing Company has been invaluable.

It is my sincere hope that readers and users of this book will find this revision of Harry's a valuable resource in their pursuit of innovative cosmetic products in future years.

Martin M. Rieger



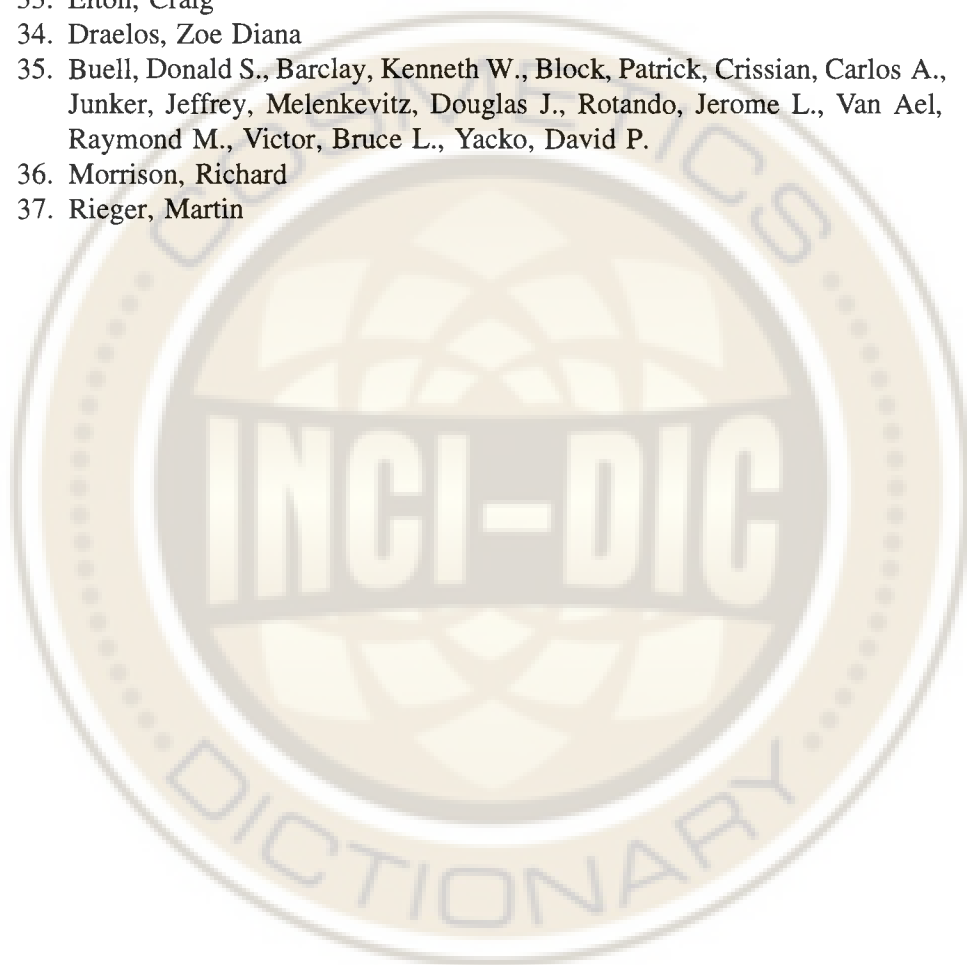
# List of Contributors by Chapter

1. Glaser, Dee Ann, Amato, Jason B, and Kollias, Nikiforos
2. Weigmann, Hans-Dieter
3. Zaiac, Martin
4. Levy, Brian
5. Harper, Scott
6. Romanovsky, Perry, and Schueller, Randy
7. Murphy, Emalee, and Wilkes, Paul D.
8. Kenney, Dolores
9. Rieger, Martin
10. Rieger, Martin
11. Laba, Dennis
12. Rieger, Martin
13. Rieger, Martin
14. Orth, Donald
15. Dweck, Antony
16. Imokawa, Genji, and Rieger, Martin
17. Bhuta, Mukund
18. Kumano, Yoshimaru, Nishiyama, Seiji, Ozawa, Tatsuya, and Takahashi, Mottoji
19. Akerson, James, and Imokawa, Genji
20. Klein, Kenneth, and Kollias, Nikiforos
21. Abrutyn, Eric
22. Popp, Karl
23. Day, Eva
24. Rieger, Martin
25. Foltis, Peter
26. Hollenberg, Jane

## x List of Contributors by Chapter

---

27. Wimmer, Eric
28. Garlen, David
29. Reich, Charles, and Chupa, Janine
30. Dallal, Joseph A.
31. Anderson, James S.
32. DeGeorge, Michael S.
33. Elton, Craig
34. Draelos, Zoe Diana
35. Buell, Donald S., Barclay, Kenneth W., Block, Patrick, Crissian, Carlos A.,  
Junker, Jeffrey, Melenkevitz, Douglas J., Rotando, Jerome L., Van Ael,  
Raymond M., Victor, Bruce L., Yacko, David P.
36. Morrison, Richard
37. Rieger, Martin



# Alphabetical List of Contributors

- 
- Abrutyn, Eric (21)  
Akerson, James (19)  
Amato, Jason (1)  
Anderson, James S. (31)  
Barclay, Kenneth (35)  
Bhuta, Mukund (17)  
Block, Patrick (35)  
Buell, Donald (35)  
Chupa, Janine (29)  
Crissian, Carlos (35)  
Dallal, Joseph (30)
- Day, Eva (23)  
DeGeorge, Michael (32)  
Draelos, Zoe Diana (34)
- Dweck, Anthony (15)  
Elton, Craig (33)  
Foltis, Peter (25)  
Garlen, David (28)  
Glaser, Dee Ann (1)  
Harper, Scott (5)  
Hollenberg, Jane (26)  
Imokawa, Genji (16, 19)  
Junker, Jeffrey (35)  
Kenney, Dolores (8)  
Klein, Kenneth (20)
- Andrew Jergens Co.  
Akerson Associates  
St. Louis University  
Bristol-Meyers Squibb Corp.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Cosmair, Inc.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Colgate-Palmolive Co.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
International Specialty  
Products, Inc.  
One Day PCR  
Redken Laboratories, Inc.  
Wake Forest University, School  
of Medicine  
Dweck Data  
Cielle, Inc.  
Cosmair, Inc.  
Cosmetech Labs, Inc.  
Saint Louis University  
Warner-Lambert Co.  
JCH Consulting  
Kao Corp.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Olson & Hierl, Ltd.  
Cosmetech Labs., Inc.



## xii Alphabetical List of Contributors

---

- Kollias, Nikiforos (1, 20)  
Kumano, Yoshimaru (18)  
Laba, Dennis (11)  
Leaver, Eric (35)  
Levy, Brian (4)  
Melenkevitz, Douglas (35)  
Morrison, Richard (36)  
Murphy, Emalee (7)  
Nishiyama, Seiji (18)  
Orth, Donald (14)  
Ozawa, Tatsuya (18)  
Popp, Karl (22)
- Reich, Charles (29)  
Rieger, Martin (9, 10, 12, 13, 16, 24, 37)  
Romanovsky, Perry (6)  
Rotando, Jerome (35)  
Schueller, Randy (6)  
Takahashi, Mottoji (18)  
Van Ael, Raymond (35)  
Victor, Bruce (35)  
Weigmann, Hans-Dieter (2)  
David Yacko (35)
- Massachusetts General Hospital  
Shiseido Co., Ltd.  
Rheox, Inc.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Bausch and Lomb Co.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
The Summit Group  
McKenna and Cuneo, L.L.P.  
Shiseido Co., Ltd.  
Neutrogena Corp  
Shiseido Co., Ltd.  
A.C. Stiefel Research Institute, Inc.  
Colgate-Palmolive Co.  
M & A Rieger Associates
- Alberto-Culver Co.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Alberto-Culver Co.  
Shiseido Co., Ltd.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.  
Textile Research Institute  
Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.

# Chapter Contributors



|   |   |
|---|---|
| Skin  | Jason B. Amato<br>Dee Ana Glaser<br>St. Louis University<br>U.S.A.<br>Nikiforos Kollias<br>Massachusetts General Hospital<br>U.S.A. |
| The Hair  | Hans-Dieter Weigmann<br>Textile Research Institute<br>U.S.A.  |
| The Nails                                       | Martin Zaiac<br>Miami, Florida<br>U.S.A.  |
| Anatomy and Physiology of<br>Ocular Tissue      | Brian Levy<br>Bausch & Lomb. Co.<br>U.S.A.  |
| The Mouth and Oral Care                         | Scott Harper<br>Warner-Lambert Co.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Fundamentals of Cosmetic<br>Product Development | Perry Romanowski<br>Randy Schueller<br>Alberto-Culver, Co.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Regulatory Requirements                         | Emalee Murphy<br>McKenna & Cuneo, L.L.P.<br>U.S.A.  |

## xiv Chapter Contributors

---

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
|                             | Paul D. Wilkes<br>The Body Shop<br>England   |
| Patents and Trade Secrets   | Dolores Kenney<br>Olson & Hierl, Ltd.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Surfactants                 | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates  |
| Cosmetic Emulsification     | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates  |
| Rheological Additives       | Dennis Laba<br>Rheox, Inc.<br>U.S.A.   |
| Antioxidants                | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates  |
| Moisturizers and Humectants | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates  |
| Preservation                | Donald Orth<br>The Neutrogena Corporation<br>U.S.A.  |
| Use of Botanicals           | Anthony Dweck<br>Dweck Data<br>England   |
| Specialty Lipids            | Genji Imokawa<br>Kao Corporation<br>Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates                        |
| Aerosol Technology          | Mukund Bhuta<br>Cosmair, Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Skin Care Products          | Yoshimaru Kumano<br>Seiji Nishiyame<br>Tatsuya Ozawa<br>Takahashi, Mottoji Shiseido Co., Ltd.<br>Japan |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | Genji Imokawa<br>Kao Corporation<br>Japan   |
| Miscellaneous Skin<br>Care Products      | James Akerson<br>Akerson Associates<br>U.S.A.   |
| Sunscreens                               | Kenneth Klein<br>Cosmetech Labs., Inc.<br>U.S.A.<br>Nikiforos Kollias<br>Massachusetts General Hospital<br>U.S.A. |
| Antiperspirants and Deodorants           | Eric Andrew Abrutyn<br>Jergens Co.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Antiacne and Oily Skin<br>Products       | Karl A.C. Popp<br>Stiefel Research Institute, Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Face, Body, and Hair<br>Masks and Scrubs | Eva Day<br>One Day PCR<br>U.S.A.  |
| Skin Cleansing Products                  | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates   |
| Shaving Preparations                     | Peter Foltis<br>Cosmair Cosmetics Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Color Cosmetics                          | Jane Hollenberg<br>JCH Consulting<br>U.S.A.   |
| Nail Polishes                            | David Garlen<br>Cosmetech Labs., Inc.<br>U.S.A.   |
| Specialty Nail Products                  | Eric Wimmer<br>TEVCO, Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |

## **xvi Chapter Contributors**

---

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Shampoos  | Janine Chupa<br>Charles Reich<br>Colgate-Palmolive<br>U.S.A.   |
| Hair Setting Products                                     | Michael S. De George<br>Redken Laboratories, Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Hair Colorants  | James Anderson<br>Bristol-Meyers Squibb Corp., Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Permanent Waving, Hair<br>Straightening, and Depilatories | Joseph A. Dallal<br>International Specialty Products, Inc.<br>U.S.A.   |
| Oral Care Products  | Craig Elton<br>Cielle, Inc.<br>U.S.A.  |
| Safety and Performance                                    | Zoe Draelos<br>High Point, North Carolina<br>U.S.A.  |
| Manufacture of Cosmetics                                  | Donald S. Buell<br>Kenneth W. Barclay<br>Patrick Block<br>Carlos A. Crissian<br>Jeffrey Junker<br>Eric J. Leaver<br>Douglas J. Melenkevitz<br>Jerome L. Rotando<br>Raymond M. Van Ael<br>Bruce L. Victor<br>David P. Yacko<br>The Estee Lauder Companies, Inc.<br>U.S.A. |
| Packaging   | Richard Morrison<br>The Summit Group<br>U.S.A.   |
| Stability   | Martin M. Rieger<br>M & A Rieger Associates  |

1. Skin
2. Hair
3. The Nails
4. Anatomy and Physiology of Ocular Tissue
5. The Mouth and Oral Care

## **PART ONE**

# **The Substrates**

The first five chapters in this edition are designed to introduce readers to the physiology and biochemistry of the human tissues to which cosmetics are applied. The emphasis is clearly on skin and hair, the tissues of primary interest to cosmetic scientists. A short description of ocular tissues is included because eyes play an important role in modern decorative cosmetics. Two additional chapters address the various tissues found in the mouth and, finally, the hard keratin of the nail.



# CHAPTER 1

# Skin

## Structure and Function of Human Skin

### INTRODUCTION

The skin is the organ that forms the border between the organism and the environment. Skin prevents dehydration, stops the penetration of noxious foreign materials and microorganisms, cushions against mechanical shock, helps to maintain a constant body temperature, and transduces incoming stimuli. In order to perform these functions, skin must be maintained in good condition, an important objective for cosmetic formulators. For cosmetic scientists, whether they are concerned with the improvement of the skin by pharmacology or with the prevention of damage as a result of artifice, an understanding of skin structure and function is essential. The impact of light on skin and on skin aging has become so important in cosmetics that it requires a complete discussion of this subject.

### SKIN MORPHOLOGY

The skin is divided into three layers: the epidermis, the dermis, and the subcutaneous tissue. The epidermis is the outermost layer of the skin and is a stratified squamous epithelium. Its thickness varies, depending on location, from 0.05 mm to 1.5 mm. The epidermis is made up primarily of keratinocytes whose basic function is to produce a filamentous protein, keratin, to serve as a protective barrier in combination with various lipid components. These cells also produce several other proteins, for example, cytokines, which play a role in the cutaneous inflammatory response. Separated from the epidermis by the basement membrane, the dermis is composed primarily of the so-called ground substance, which includes glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and the structural protein collagen. While its thickness also varies with location from 0.3 mm to 3.0 mm, the dermis is divided into two layers: the papillary



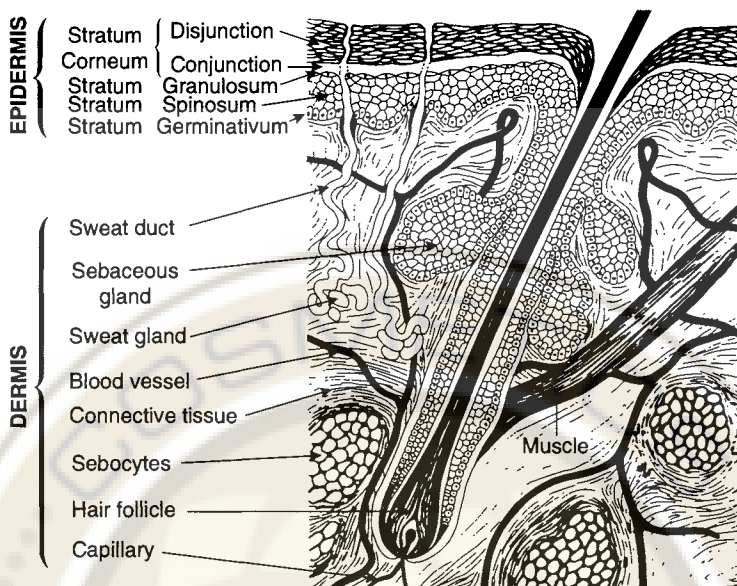


Figure 1.1. Diagram of normal human skin

layer, which interdigitates with the epidermal rete ridges, and the reticular layer, which extends to the subcutaneous tissue. This deepest layer of the skin, also known as the subcutis or hypodermis, is composed primarily of lipocytes (Fig. 1.1).

### EPIDERMIS AND THE KERATINIZING SYSTEM

The epidermis consists of a number of layers: the innermost basal layer, the malpighian or prickle layer, the granular layer, and the horny layer or stratum corneum. The stratification is the result of changes in the keratinocytes as they mature and move outward from the basal layer, in which they are continuously formed by the mitosis of self-renewing progenitor cells and are shed on the skin surface. Three other cell types are present: melanocytes, the dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells; Langerhans cells, which are colorless and dendritic in form; and Merkel cells, which are concerned with sensation. The melanocytes and the Merkel cells are confined mainly to the basal layer, while the Langerhans cells are distributed in the basal, spinous, and granular layers.

### Dermo-Epidermal Junction

The basement membrane zone forms the junction between the cellular epidermis and the dermis. Under the electron microscope, it is seen to be composed of four components, listed from the outermost layer: the plasma

membrane of the basal keratinocytes, the clear lamina lucida, the electron-dense basal lamina, and the dermal fibrils and bundles of fine filaments [1]. Some details of the components of this junction are provided in a later segment.

### **Stratum Basale**

The stratum basale or stratum germinativum (Fig. 1.1) is a continuous layer that gives rise to all the keratinocytes. It is usually described as one cell thick, but in thick normal or in pathological epidermis it appears that mitosis may not be confined to cells in contact with the basement membrane. A portion of the basal cells is proliferative. These are the cells that differentiate and move up through the epidermis, eventually to become the components of the stratum corneum and later desquamate. The replacement time for the whole epidermis is probably about 42 days and for the stratum corneum about 14 days, and it is generally agreed that the times are considerably less in psoriatic skin. While the process of keratinization remains incompletely understood, in normal skin the desquamation of keratinocytes is in equilibrium with the generation of keratinocytes by mitosis of the proliferating cells. The importance of this equilibrium is best understood by studying examples of those skin diseases with abnormal keratinization. Abnormally rapid transformation of basal cells into horny cells of the stratum corneum occurs in psoriasis. Ichthyosis vulgaris, on the other hand, is a genetic disorder that results from abnormal retention of keratinocytes.

Cells of the stratum basale have a basophilic cytoplasm and dark-staining elongated nuclei; under the electron microscope their cytoplasm reveals many ribosomes, mitochondria, and sometimes smooth membranes. In addition, they contain numerous fine tonofilaments, about 5 nm in diameter, that form the developing cytoskeleton. The basal cells also often contain melanin, transferred from adjacent melanocytes. Intercellular bridges, or desmosomes, connect basal cells with one another and with the overlying squamous cells. Modified desmosomes, or hemidesmosomes, connect the basal cells to the underlying basement membrane zone.

### **Stratum Spinosum**

The stratum spinosum or prickle cell layer is so called because the cells are given a spiny appearance by the numerous desmosomes. These desmosomes, or specialized attachment plates for the cellular tonofilaments, correlate with the intercellular bridges between keratinocytes. The glycocalyx is the intercellular cement between keratinocytes and is composed of glycoproteins. In the upper region of the stratum spinosum, lamellar granules, also known as keratinosomes or Odland bodies, make their appearance. These are ovoid bodies about 100–500 nm long. In the stratum granulosum they ultimately migrate toward the periphery of the cell and are discharged into the intercellular spaces.

## 6 Harry's Cosmeticology

---

Their appearance there correlates with the degradation of keratinocytes. Their lipid contents act to establish a barrier to water loss and may participate in stratum corneum cellular cohesion.

### **Stratum Granulosum**

The thickness of the granular cell layer is usually proportional to the thickness of the stratum corneum. It may be only one cell layer thick in thin skin and up to 10 layers on the palms and soles. The cells contain basophilic granules of a material called keratohyalin, a material thought to be responsible for keratin filament aggregation. The “hard” keratins of hair and nail lack these keratohyalin granules.

### **Stratum Lucidum**

The stratum lucidum, not seen in most formalin-fixed sections, is located at the deepest portion of the stratum corneum. It can be recognized only in palmar and plantar skin.

### **Stratum Corneum**

In the stratum corneum the keratinocytes have lost their nuclei and virtually all of their cytoplasmic organelles and contents, including the keratohyalin granules. This layer of cells is about 10 cells thick (10  $\mu$ ) and is located on top of the viable epidermis, a 100  $\mu$  thick layer of about 10 biologically active keratinocyte cells. This corneal cell layer stains eosinophilic because of the absence of the basophilic nucleus. The cells are flattened and completely filled with keratin, in the form of bundles of filaments embedded in an opaque inter-filamentous material. The keratin filaments align into disulfide cross-linked macrofibers under the influence of filaggrin, the protein component of the keratohyalin granule responsible for keratin filament aggregation [2]. The structure of the stratum corneum has been compared to that of a brick wall, with the corneocytes as bricks and the intercellular lipids as mortar [3]. Horny cells are continuously shed from the skin surface.

During epidermal differentiation, changes are also seen in the composition of lipids. Cholesterol, triglycerides, and phospholipids exist in the lower layers of the epidermis. In the stratum spinosum and stratum granulosum, though, lipids are packaged into the lamellar granules. These lipids include phospholipids, glycolipids, and free sterols. These polar lipids are reorganized into neutral lipids in the intercellular spaces once the contents of the lamellar granules are released. The stratum corneum is therefore rich in ceramides, free sterols, and free fatty acids [4]. There are six major classes of free ceramides and two major classes of ceramides bound to cell surfaces in the stratum corneum.

Research conducted about 15 to 20 years ago suggested that the polar lipids found in the lamellar granules and in viable layers of the skin are modified under the influence of enzymes to assume more nonpolar characteristics. Some of these features are summarized in Table 1.1.

The makeup of lipids suggests that hydrophilic lipids are excluded from the stratum corneum to provide a hydrophobic surface.

## TERMINAL DIFFERENTIATION

Terminal differentiation describes the change of the cuboidal keratinocytes (on the basement membrane) to the flat cellular remnants that are shed from the skin surface. The progressive changes of keratinocytes are illustrated in Figure 1.2 and are accompanied by biochemical changes, formation of keratins, formation and hydrolytic changes in lipids, loss of water, and cross-linking of cell envelopes.

The formation of keratins proceeds from the intermediate filaments present in keratinocytes.

Intermediate filaments of more than 50 types are synthesized in human tissues. In skin, two types (I and II) are specifically expressed in epithelial cells. In this classification acidic keratins (cytokeratins K9–K20) are identified as type I, while the so-called basic keratins (cytokeratins K1–K8) are classified as type II. In skin the keratins are customarily dimers of one type I and one type II. The fundamental structure of the intermediate filaments includes coil-coil  $\alpha$ -helical segments bonded to each other by so-called (nonhelical) linker segments. Both ends of the rod-shaped filament are terminated by peptides. The exact modus of attachment of these filaments to each other to form the

**Table 1.1 Level of Epidermal Lipids (%)**

| Fraction  | Basal layer | Stratum granulosum | Stratum corneum |       |
|---|-------------|--------------------|-----------------|-------|
|   |             |                    | Whole           | Outer |
| Polar lipids<br>(phospholipids,<br>cholesteryl sulfate)                     | 45          | 25                 | 5               | 2     |
| Neutral lipids (sterols,<br>fatty acids,<br>hydrocarbons,<br>triglycerides) | 51          | 56                 | 80              | 68    |
| Sphingolipids   | 8           | 12                 | 18              | 27    |
| Glucosyl ceramides  | 4           | 5                  | Trace           | Trace |

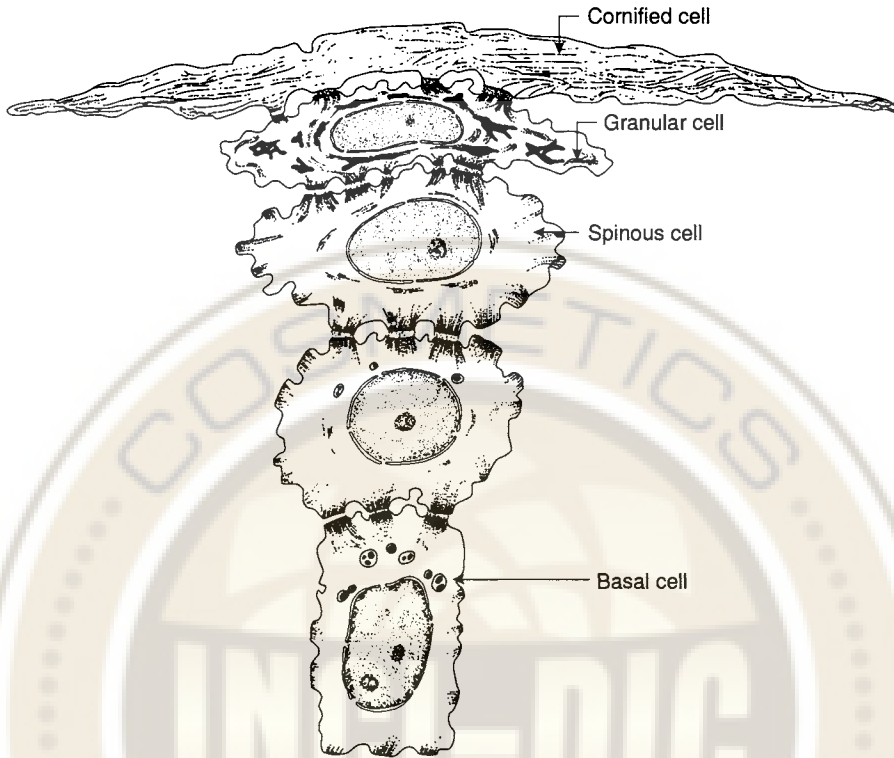


Figure 1.2. Conversion of individual basal keratinocytes into the flat cells of the stratum corneum

keratins within the keratinocytes is still under investigation. As noted, epithelial cytoskeletal filaments generally belong to one of two keratin (acidic or neutral-basic) groups ranging in molecular weight from about 40 to 70 kDa. Filaggrin has been identified as one of the keratohyalin proteins forms in differentiating keratinocytes. Filaggrin is involved in the aggregation of keratin filaments to form the keratins found in mature keratinocytes or corneal cells. After filaggrin has served its function as a matrix between intermediate filaments, it is hydrolyzed enzymatically to create various free amino acids that form part of the natural moisturizing factor.

The hydrolytic changes of the epidermal lipids are also controlled by keratinocytes, which discharge lipids into the intercellular space after forming the so-called lamellar granules. These lipids are distinctly different from the sebaceous lipids secreted by the sebaceous glands. In the process of terminal differentiation, which requires about three to four weeks, the basal cell (keratinocyte) generates a remarkable set of complex lipids (e.g.,

ceramides). During the cells' passage outward, these lipids are modified (become more hydrophobic) to create the biphasic structure commonly called stratum corneum. The function of this outermost covering of the human body is discussed later in this chapter under "Barrier Function."

During its ascent to the skin surface, the keratinocyte shrinks, primarily through loss of water. The fate of this water is not known, but one may safely assume that it becomes part of the evaporating water generally described as transepidermal water loss. The loss of water during the maturation of keratinocytes is an important phenomenon that must be considered in studies of skin moisture levels (Fig. 1.3). The level of water in the basal layer is about that found in internal tissues, that is, about 80–85%. The water level drops stepwise to about 35% at the border between the stratum granulosum and the stratum corneum. The water level in the topmost layers of the skin is variable and is under the control of the environment and the evaporative flux from lower skin layers.

Finally, the proteins in the cell membranes of the maturing keratinocytes undergo drastic changes due to cross-linking. This provides the terminally differentiated corneal cell with a rigid cell envelope that is chemically resistant and acts as a protective coating. The most important enzymes that play a role in this process are transglutaminases which catalyze  $\epsilon$ -( $\gamma$ -glutamyl) lysine cross-linking. Involucrin is the primary cytoplasmic precursor to the protein making up the cell envelope. Other cross-linked proteins are present and have been identified, for example, loricrin.

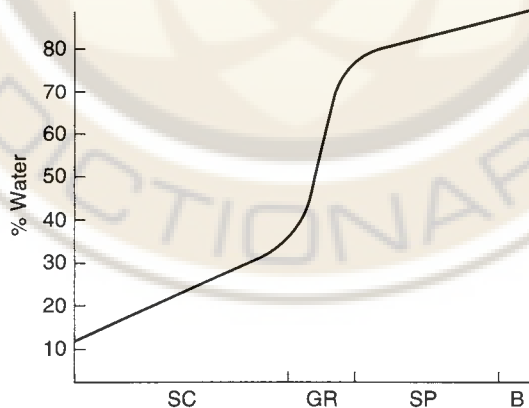


Figure 1.3. Water concentration profile in epidermal layers [SC—stratum corneum; GR—stratum granulosum; SP—stratum spinosum; B—basal layer (stratum germinativum)]

Biologists have further identified some layers within the stratum corneum. The so-called desquamating layer at the surface is frequently called stratum corneum disjunction, while the layer below it is known as stratum corneum conjunction. To complete this highly simplified discussion of the skin, it is important to note that the layer of keratinocytes is frequently identified as viable epidermis. Cells from this layer can be cultured and are commonly used to study the release of cytokines and the like and the impact of drugs and/or cosmetic ingredients. In contrast, the nonviable epidermis includes only the dead cells of the stratum corneum.

Before leaving the life history of the epidermis, the process of differentiation should be considered as proceeding from the inside to the exterior. The outward movement of biological debris, water, and lipids directly opposes human efforts to drive ingredients/drugs into and through the skin unless special efforts are made to create molecules that are shaped and manipulated to permeate.

### PIGMENTARY SYSTEM

Melanocytes are dendritic cells that produce and secrete melanosomes, which contain melanin. Melanin is the major determinant of skin color. The number of melanocytes in the epidermis is the same regardless of skin color; it is rather the number and size of melanosomes produced that determine the color of one's skin. Melanosomes in dark skin are nonaggregated, whereas they are smaller and form membrane-bound complexes in light skin. Melanocytes are derived from the neural crest in the embryo and are seen in the basal layer of the epidermis by the eighth week of gestation. They differ from the other cells of the stratum basale by the possession of dendritic processes, by which they transfer pigment to a group of keratinocytes, the whole forming the "epidermal melanin unit" [5]. Typically each melanocyte is associated with about 36–40 keratinocytes in the human epidermis. Melanocytes have no desmosomes and thus, when stained with hematoxylin and eosin, appear to have a halo due to the separation from adjacent keratinocytes. The concentration of melanocytes, though, does vary in different areas of the skin, with the highest concentration on the face and the male genitalia and the lowest concentration on the trunk.

The characteristic feature of melanocytes is a special cytoplasmic organelle known as a melanosome in which the melanin is formed by the action of the enzyme tyrosinase. The melanosomes arise as spherical, membrane-bound vesicles in the zone of the Golgi apparatus and eventually appear as densely pigmented granules [6].

Melanins are quinoid polymers of two kinds. Pheomelanins are yellow or red in color, and eumelanins produce the brown or black color. Both

are formed by the same initial steps, which involve oxidation of tyrosine to 3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) and its dehydrogenation to DOPA-quinone. The formation of eumelanins then involves several further steps to produce indole-5,6-quinone, which polymerizes and becomes linked to protein. It is now believed that eumelanin is not a homopolymer composed solely of indole-5,6-quinone units but rather a poikilopolymer that includes several intermediates. Pheomelanins are formed by a different route. The DOPA-quinone interacts with cysteine to form 5-S- and 2-S-cysteinyl-dopa, and these isomers are further oxidized to a series of intermediates that then polymerize [7].

The formation of melanin depends on the generation of free radical species. The biochemical pathways leading to the formation of melanin pigments *in vivo* were described by Raper and by Raper and Mason and more recently by Prota. This information can be found in most textbooks of biochemistry and is not repeated here. Once formed, melanin has been identified as a (stable?) free radical that can react with superoxide.

The significance of melanin as a purported photoprotectant and the response of skin to ultraviolet (UV) irradiation are so important to skin appearance and health that these topics are discussed in Section B, "Responses to Sunlight of Human Skin."

## LANGERHANS CELLS

Langerhans cells are bone marrow-derived cells of the monocyte-macrophage lineage. They are found scattered among the stratum spinosum and constitute approximately 3–4% of all epidermal cells. These dendritic cells are similar in form and number to melanocytes but contain no pigment. The hallmark of the Langerhans cell is the characteristic cytoplasmic organelles called Birbeck granules. These are formed when a membrane-bound antigen is internalized in the Langerhans cell.

Langerhans cells are responsible for the recognition, uptake, processing, and presentation of antigens in the epidermis to T lymphocytes. It is by this pathway that they play a crucial role in immunosurveillance, contact sensitization, and allograft skin rejection. Langerhans cell function is impaired by UVB radiation, resulting in a decrease in the antigen-presenting capacity and in the production of cytokines.

## APPENDAGEAL STRUCTURES

### Eccrine Sweat Glands

Humans have several million eccrine sweat glands distributed over most skin sites, but they are more concentrated in the axilla, forehead, palms, and soles.



## 12 Harry's Cosmeticology

---

In some areas they number as many as 600 glands per cm<sup>2</sup>. Eccrine sweat glands are the most numerous skin appendages and are responsible for the production of sweat. They have a cylindrical spiral duct lined with epidermal cells extending from their visible opening in the epidermis down into the deep dermis, where the duct becomes coiled and convoluted into a ball [8]. This secretory coil manufactures the odorless sweat, which rises up the duct to be released on the skin surface. It is thought that the duct of the gland has the ability to modify the sweat as it flows upward by removing salts or water. The sweat glands control both body temperature and excretion, and they are under the control of the cholinergic nervous system. The evaporation of sweat has a cooling effect. The glands respond to environmental temperature but also to other stimuli, such as UV light, emotional stress, and rises in body temperature. On the palms and soles, the secretion from the glands serves to increase surface friction.

Sweating appears to involve activation of myoepithelial cells, which line the ducts of the glands. Although sweating is considered to be a continuous process, it seems that sweat is ejected in small bursts, suggesting a peristaltic action by the ducts. The composition of eccrine sweat is similar to that of plasma, although more dilute, and was documented about 40 years ago. It includes, in decreasing relative concentration (mg %): Cl<sup>-</sup> (320), Na<sup>+</sup> (200), lactic acid (35), K<sup>+</sup> (20), urea (15), ammonia (5), Ca<sup>++</sup> (2), glucose<sup>++</sup> (2), Mg<sup>++</sup> (1), amino acid (1), and creatinine (0.3). More information on eccrine sweat production is included in Chapter 21.

### Apocrine Glands

The apocrine glands are tubular glands attached to the hair follicle and, like the sebaceous glands, develop in association with it [9]. Although rudiments are found covering the entire surface of the fetus, the glands become canalized and functional almost exclusively in the axillae, the anogenital regions, the areola, the external auditory canal, and the eyelids. In humans, apocrine gland secretions are milky and viscous but without odor. Odor production is related to bacterial action at the skin surface.

After puberty, secretion is in response to emotive stimuli. Adrenergic nerves control secretory activity, in contrast to the cholinergic control of eccrine function. The function of the glands in the human species has been much debated, but they serve no known function. In other mammals the glands serve a sexual function.

### Sebaceous Glands

Sebaceous glands [10] secrete sebum, which forms the majority of the lipid that covers the skin and hair. They are found in all areas of human skin except the palms, soles, and dorsum of the feet. Sebaceous glands are usually

associated with hair follicles, except for those on the nipple, areola, and labia minora. The greatest concentrations (reportedly as high as 400–900/cm<sup>2</sup>) are found on the scalp, face, upper chest, and shoulders.

The glands are holocrine and thus form their secretion by decomposition of their cells. New cells are formed continually from the lining of the gland by cell division to replace those lost. No motor innervation has been demonstrated in humans. During the generation of sebum, cells at the periphery of the lobule undergo division. As the daughter cell moves toward the center of the lobule, it synthesizes lipids. As the sebum accumulates, the cell increases in volume as much as 150-fold. When synthesis is complete, cell rupture occurs. This process from cell division to rupture requires approximately 14 days. The relatively long delay must be taken into consideration when designing drugs and therapies aimed at altering sebum.

Sebaceous gland activity is under hormonal control. It is stimulated by androgens of both gonadal and adrenal origin. In human males the glands are minute during the prepubertal period but undergo vast enlargement at puberty, when their output increases more than fivefold. Eunuchs secrete about half as much sebum as normal males but substantially more than boys; it seems that the secretion is dependent on adrenal androgens. Adult women secrete only a little less than men; their sebaceous activity appears to be maintained by androgens from the ovary and the adrenal cortex. Estrogens and anti-androgens, such as cyproterone acetate, inhibit sebaceous secretion in man. On the other hand, relatively small doses of potent androgens can cause enlargement of the glands and an increase in sebum production.

Human sebum is composed of triglycerides (57.5%), wax esters (26.0%), squalene (12.0%), free fatty acids (10%), and to a minor extent cholesterol and cholesterol esters. Epidermally derived lipids differ in lacking wax esters and squalene and having much higher proportions of cholesterol esters and cholesterol. There are marked differences in sebum composition among species. The origins of sebaceous lipids and their composition are different from those of the epidermal lipids [4].

The purpose of sebum is not known. While excessive sebum production has been associated with the development of acne vulgaris, lack of sebum production in prepubertal children is not associated with any skin abnormalities.

## HAIR

Perhaps no single structure of the skin plays as important a role as human hair. And despite the vast body of knowledge regarding the anatomy, biology, and function of hair, humans are still unable to induce hair regrowth in the many disorders that result in hair loss or to effect permanent hair removal in states

## 14 Harry's Cosmeticology

---

of excessive hair. The cost of hair care in terms of time and money spent is huge in many cultures, and the psychological impact of hair disorders should not be underestimated.

The hair follicle is quite variable, depending on its location. In adults deep terminal hairs are found on the scalp and male beard area. Hair on the extremities and trunk is located more superficially in the skin. Vellus hairs are present on the female face and on the nonbearded areas of the male face. Lanugo is soft fine hair that covers the fetus and is shed prior to birth.

In general, the cross-sectional shape of terminal Caucasian scalp hair is round and somewhat curly; African American scalp hair is oval, sometimes flattened, and usually kinky; hair in Asians is round in cross-section and straight. These relationships do not apply to pubic hair, beard hair, and eyelashes, which have similar features in all races and are typically oval.

Hair color is due to the distribution of melanosomes within the hair shaft produced by melanocytes in the hair bulb. These are transferred to cells of the hair matrix similar to the transfer from melanocytes to keratinocyte in the epidermis. Three types of melanosomes are present in hair. Eumelanins are seen in dark hair, and pheomelanins predominate in blond hair. The intensity of color is related to the number of fully melanized melanosomes produced. Gray hair and white hair are due to a decreased number of melanocytes that produce fewer melanosomes.

A much more detailed discussion of hair—growth, properties, and chemistry—is found in Chapter 2.

### NAILS

The nail plate is composed of keratinized cells that originate in the epidermis of the nail matrix. As discussed previously, there are no keratohyalin granules. The proximal nail fold forms the cuticle. The nailbed does not contribute to the development of the nail plate but serves as a network of parallel longitudinal ridges under the plate. The structure and growth characteristics of the human nail are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 3.

### SKIN FUNCTIONS

#### CYTOKINES

Cytokines are proteins produced primarily by keratinocytes that act on other cells to mediate inflammation. The epidermal keratinocyte is a prodigious source of immunologic molecules and thus participates in cutaneous immunologic and inflammatory reactions [11]. Some of these factors are produced constitutively, while others are produced only after signal

transduction by external or systemic cues. Activated keratinocytes produce a variety of cytokines including interleukins (IL-1, IL-3, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-10), granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, macrophage colony-stimulating factor, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ), transforming growth factors (TGF- $\alpha$ , TGF- $\beta$ ), platelet-derived growth factor, fibroblast growth factor, and nerve growth factor. This capability confers upon keratinocytes an active role in regulating the synthesis of extracellular matrix molecules. For example, IL-1, one of the most studied cytokines of the epidermis, appears to be released from the skin in response to UVB. The release of this cytokine after exposure to sunlight may account for some of the features of the sunlight response.

With the advent of recombinant DNA technology, human cytokines have become increasingly available for clinical use, and there are well-documented cutaneous toxicities associated with these agents.

## ENZYMES

Enzymes are important constituents of the skin and are located in the epidermis and dermis. Primary lysosomes are membrane-bound and contain a variety of hydrolytic enzymes. They are found in the Golgi region of the keratinocytes primarily within the basal cell layer. Lysosomal enzymes are also found in the lamellar granules, as mentioned earlier. Secondary lysosomes, called phagolysosomes, are present in the basal cell layer of the epidermis. They digest phagocytized melanosomes and cellular constituents following epidermal injury.

Mast cells are rich in enzymes including histamines, heparin, tryptase, chymase, and other enzymes important in allergic reactions. Enzymes also play an essential role in the continuous remodeling of the collagens, elastin, glycosaminoglycans, and glycoproteins of the extracellular matrix. The initial step in the complex process of degradation and replacement involves enzymes called metalloproteinases [12]. Collagenase, one of the metalloproteinases, initiates the proteolytic events that result in the breakdown of collagen. Topical retinoids used in treating the effects of photoaging probably act by decreasing the production of collagenase.

The viable epidermis includes the previously noted proteolytic and lipolytic enzymes. In addition, antioxidant enzymes are available to help in the protection of skin against solar irradiation. A brief discussion of these enzymes is included in Chapter 12. The desquamation of corneal squames is likely to require proteolytic or lipolytic enzymes in nonviable environments. The exact nature of these participants in skin homeostasis is not known, but their need to perform in a benign (moist) environment has been established, as described by Rawlings et al. [13].

### BARRIER FUNCTION

Granular cells release small organelles called Odland bodies into the intercellular space. These granules, which contain a trilaminar membrane, establish a barrier to water loss and mediate stratum corneum cell cohesion. The lamellar granules fuse with the granular cell plasma membrane and secrete their contents of polar lipids, hydrolytic enzymes, and free sterols into the intercellular spaces [13]. After they release their contents, the lipids become organized into lamellae, which provide the structural basis for the barrier to epidermal permeability. The hydrolytic enzymes that are released are thought to change polar lipids into more hydrophobic lipid products such as free fatty acids, cholesterol, and ceramides. These coalesce into sheets within the intercellular space of the stratum corneum, thus forming a waterproof barrier. Acid phosphatases, which are also released from the Odland bodies, are thought to promote desquamation by breaking up the intercellular connections of the keratinocytes.

The major barrier to permeation through and penetration into the epidermis is a so-called "intact" stratum corneum barrier. Such a system consists of corneal cells with their proteinaceous envelopes surrounded by the essentially nonpolar lipid remnant sheets of the lamellar granules. Any substance (hydrophilic or hydrophobic) must permeate the lipid sheets formed by a complex network of fatty acids, cholesterol, and ceramides. The sheets of this lipid network are believed to exist as bilayers. Imperfections in the lipid network due to injury, water swelling, or solvent/detergent extraction facilitate the permeation of diverse species through the corneal barrier. Once the permeant reaches the viable epidermis, its progress is much less impeded. Investigators of these phenomena agree that absence of or damage to the corneal barrier leaves the body open to invasion of both desirable and noxious components of topical products. For further details readers are urged to consult Ref. 14.

Skin is not totally impermeable, however, and its permeability shows regional variations and, reportedly, changes from birth to old age. The degree of absorption depends on the properties of the substance and the composition of the vehicle. In general, the faster and more extensively penetrating compounds are relatively nonpolar small molecules. Certain factors are known to influence percutaneous absorption of substances. For example, increased skin temperature and increased water content of the skin result in an increase in absorption through the skin. The increased hydration of the stratum corneum induces swelling of the corneocytes and uptake of water into the intercellular spaces, thus disrupting the physical barrier of the skin and allowing for a more favorable environment for hydrophilic substances.

Vehicles also affect the absorption of incorporated compounds. Important factors include the absorption characteristics of the vehicle, the degree of partition between the vehicle and the stratum corneum, and the concentration of the compound in the vehicle. Most substances traverse the thick palmoplantar stratum corneum in significantly smaller amounts than they do the thin stratum corneum of other regions.

Skin damaged by diseases or chemicals is much more permeable than is intact skin. This change reflects the effect that these agents have on the physicochemical state of the stratum corneum. Diseases such as toxic epidermal necrolysis and pemphigus, which produce complete denaturation of the epidermis, dramatically increase permeability. Chemicals that can damage the skin include solvents, denaturants, and surfactants.

The topical application to the skin of drugs for the treatment of cutaneous and systemic disorders has become an established route of administration. In general, drugs with low molecular weights and some degree of both oil solubility and water solubility can penetrate the skin adequately. Topical drug administration is most certainly useful for intradermal therapy. The currently popular systemic drug administration via topical dosing (patching and the like) requires deliberate damaging of the skin's barrier function to enhance drug permeation. Some drugs that require minimal barrier damage for transdermal therapy include nitroglycerin for coronary artery disease and estradiol for estrogen replacement.

## DERMIS

The dermis [15] is a tough and resilient tissue that cushions the body against mechanical injury and provides nutrient to the epidermis and cutaneous appendages. It consists of an association of protein fibers within an amorphous ground substance containing glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), previously known as mucopolysaccharides. There are few cells in this matrix; most of them are fibroblasts, which secrete the dermal constituents. Fibroblasts are derived from the mesenchyme. The mast cell, also of mesenchymal origin, houses granules that contain heparin, histamine, and other active substances. The mast cell is an active participant in skin inflammation and irritation, as well as in several other skin disorders. The dermis also houses blood, contains lymphatic and nervous systems, and surrounds the invaginated epidermal appendages. The GAGs in the dermis can hold copious amounts of water and tend to surround the other constituents of the matrix. Together with the fibrous portion of the matrix, these substances account for the skin's flexibility and resistance to deformation.

### **COLLAGEN**

The major fibrous constituent of the dermis, accounting for 75% of the dry weight and 18–30% of the volume, is collagen [16]. Under the light microscope collagen fibers appear as eosinophilic branching wavy bands. Collagen fibers are loosely arranged in the papillary dermis and are tightly bundled in the reticular dermis. Pilosebaceous units, eccrine glands, and apocrine and dermal blood vessels are surrounded by a thin meshwork of collagen. Collagen fibers display characteristic cross-striations with a periodicity of 60–70 nm. Collagen is rich in the amino acids hydroxyproline, hydroxylysine, and glycine. The fibroblasts produce a precursor known as procollagen, which includes 300–400 additional amino acids in each of its chains; these extensions are removed after secretion, which results in the conversion to the collagen molecule. Collagen fibrils form by the association of collagen molecules. Vitamin C and copper are two of several cofactors required in the biosynthesis of collagen. Collagen production is a dynamic process that involves continual synthesis by fibroblasts and degradation by collagenases.

### **ELASTIN AND RETICULIN**

Elastic fibers make up only 4% of the dry weight and 1% of the volume of the dermis. They are delicate, straight, freely branching fibers that prove very resilient. These fibers are thicker in the lower portion of the dermis and become thinner as they approach the epidermis. Elastin differs from collagen not only structurally but also chemically. Desmosine is an amino acid unique to elastin.

About 0.4% of the dry weight of the dermis is made up of fine branching fibers which, unlike collagen, stain black with silver nitrate and are known as reticulin. Their axial periodicity is identical to that of collagen. Reticulin fibers in the papillary dermis serve to anchor the basal lamina [16].

### **GROUND SUBSTANCE**

The amorphous ground substance in which the fibers and cells lie contains acidic GAGs. In dermis the major forms are hyaluronic acid, chondroitin sulfate, and dermatan sulfate.

### **NERVES**

The skin is supplied with both sensory and autonomic nerves. It is innervated with about one million afferent nerve fibers; most terminate in the face and extremities, and relatively few supply the back. The sensory nerves, unlike autonomic nerves, possess a myelin sheath up to their terminal ramifications.

The papillary dermis is heavily innervated with unmyelinated nerve fibers that transmit the sensations of temperature, pain, and pruritis. Three types of special nerve end organs also exist in the dermis. Vater-Pacini corpuscles are large end-organs that are located in the deeper portions of the dermis and subcutis and mediate a sense of pressure. They measure up to 1 mm in diameter and have their greatest concentration at the tips of the fingers and toes. A few are present in the nipple and anogenital regions. Meissner corpuscles are located in the dermal papillae and mediate the sense of touch. They occur only on the ventral aspects of the hands and feet and are most concentrated in the fingertips. The mucocutaneous end-organs are found in the papillary dermis of the modified hairless skin of the glans, the prepuce, the clitoris, the labia minora, the perianal region, and the vermilion border.

The autonomic nervous system supplies fibers to the arrector pili muscles, the blood vessels, and the eccrine and apocrine glands. The sebaceous glands are not innervated, and their functioning depends on endocrine stimuli. The autonomic nervous system controls vasoconstriction, contraction of the arrector pili muscles, and glandular secretion.

### **VASCULATURE**

The dermal vasculature consists of intercommunicating plexuses. The subpapillary plexus lies within the papillary dermis and runs parallel to the epidermis to furnish a supply of capillaries, arterioles, and venules to the dermal papillae. The deeper plexuses are composed of larger vessels and surround hair follicles and eccrine glands. The dermal lymphatics are associated with the vascular plexuses.

### **MUSCLES**

Smooth muscle occurs in the skin as the arrector pili muscles of the hair to pull the follicle upward with contraction. There are also smooth muscles fibers in the scrotum and the areolas.

Striated muscle occurs in the skin within the neck as the platysmas and in the muscles of expression of the face.

Special aggregates of smooth muscles are found between the arterioles and the venules in the skin. These serve to shunt blood from the arterial to the venous system directly and thus bypass the capillary system.

### **SKIN DAMAGE**

There are numerous dermatoses caused by damage from external forces; only a few of the more common ones are described in this section.



Thermal burns are caused by excessive heat on the skin. The changes in the skin due to dry heat or scalding are classified in four degrees. A sunburn is the most common example of a first-degree burn and results from active congestion of the skin. This erythema may be followed by peeling of the epidermis. In a second-degree burn there is leakage of serum from capillaries leading to edema and vesicles, but patients recover without scar formation. Third- and fourth-degree burns involve partial and full thickness dermal involvement and by definition heal with scar formation.

Sunburn is defined as the reaction of the skin to sunlight exposure in excess of the dose that causes only erythema. Details of the response of skin to UV light or sun exposure are described in a later section of this chapter. Erythemogenic UV exposure causes edema of the epidermis, depletion of Langerhans cells, and microvascular injury. UV light can also cause damage to cellular DNA by inducing the production of thymine dimers and DNA strand breaks via the activation of oxygen radicals. Chronic sun exposure causes photoaging and is associated with precancerous actinic keratosis as well as malignant basal cell and squamous cell carcinomas. These phenomena, too, are described in some detail in a later segment of this chapter.

Frostbite occurs when soft parts are frozen and deprived of their blood supply. Common areas of involvement include the ears, nose, cheeks, fingers, and toes. The frozen area becomes pale and waxy, usually without associated pain. Various degrees of destruction occur to the skin, similar to those seen in burns.

The effects of ionizing radiation on the skin depend on the amount of radiation and the intensity of exposure. Large doses cause cell death, while smaller doses lead to temporary arrest of mitosis and chromosomal breaks. An acute radiodermatitis occurs after a latent period of a few hours to several days. The symptoms include erythema, edema, vesiculation, and ulceration and may take weeks to months to clear. Chronic exposure to ionizing radiation damages the skin to varying degrees. After a latent period, changes include telangiectasias, atrophy, xerosis, striated and brittle nails, sparse hair, and possible ulcerations and carcinomas.

Callus is a pressure-induced circumscribed hyperkeratosis. It occurs over areas of intermittent pressure, especially over the bony prominences. Treatment considerations include padding to relieve pressure, paring of the lesion, and the use of keratolytics.

### **CHRONOLOGIC AGING OF THE SKIN**

The aging of the skin is attributable to two processes: true aging related to the intrinsic passage of time and photoaging resulting from chronic UV

light exposure. The mechanism by which aging occurs is not known, but the physiologic decline of the skin as one ages is well documented [17]. Major age-related changes in the skin's appearance include dryness, wrinkling, laxity, and development of benign neoplasms (Table 1.2). Functions of the skin that decline with age are numerous but include decreased sebum production, lowered chemical clearance in the dermis, and delayed cell replacement (Table 1.3).

Histologically one sees a flattening of the dermo-epidermal junction, with a 50% reduction in the number of interdigitations between the dermal papillae and the epidermal rete pegs between the third and ninth decades. The reduced smaller contact area between these two tissues allows for less communication and less nutrient transfer as the skin ages. While there is little epidermal atrophy, the aged dermis is atrophic and relatively acellular and avascular. There is a loss of dermal thickness of 20% in elderly persons, thought to be related to the loss of elastin and collagen fibers and contractions of connective tissue septae within the subcutaneous fat [18].

To the casual observer, the major symptoms of aging skin are wrinkles. The abrogation of wrinkles or means for their repair via cosmetic manipulation has become a primary concern. Chronologic aging of skin and sunlight-induced aging are characterized by flattening of the dermo-epidermal junction and various biochemical changes in the dermis. The latter include reduction of

**Table 1.2 Histologic Features of Aging Skin**

| Epidermis                           | Dermis                          | Appendages                            |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Flattened dermal-epidermal junction | Atrophy (loss of dermal volume) | Depigmented hair                      |
| Variable thickness                  | Fewer fibroblasts               | Loss of hair                          |
| Variable cell size and shape        | Fewer mast cells                | Conversion of terminal to vellus hair |
| Occasional nuclear atypia           | Fewer blood vessels             | Abnormal nail plates                  |
| Fewer melanocytes                   | Shortened capillary loops       | Fewer glands                          |
| Fewer Langerhans cells              | Abnormal nerve endings          |                                       |

**Table 1.3 Functions of Skin That Decline with Age**

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Cell replacement      | Vascular responsiveness |
| Injury response       | Thermoregulation        |
| Barrier function      | Sweat production        |
| Chemical clearance    | Sebum production        |
| Sensory perception    | Vitamin D production    |
| Immune responsiveness |                         |

collagen VII and of several GAGs and loss of adipose tissue. At the same time, elastic tissue hypertrophy tends to increase the size of wrinkles. The oxytalon fibers that extend from the dermo-epidermal junction downward into the papillary dermis are lost or at least decreased during both types of aging.

The debate concerning age-associated changes in the percutaneous absorption of substances through the epidermis continues. It has been established, though, that there is an age-associated decrease in the dermal clearance of transepidermally absorbed materials. Clinically this may be observed in the persistence of contact dermatitis in the elderly.

Decreased vascular responsiveness has been documented in older skin, as has mild dermal microvascular wall thickening, probably contributing to vascular fragility of older skin.

Studies have shown an age-associated decrease of 30–50% in epidermal turnover rate between the third and eighth decades, which explains the delayed wound healing seen in the elderly. Experiments have shown easier separation of the epidermis from the dermis with age, which explains the ease with which elderly skin tears and forms abrasions. In vivo studies have shown a significant decline in skin elasticity and extensibility during each decade of life.

While the size and number of sebaceous glands do not decrease with age, there is a 60% reduction in sebum production over the adult life span, secondary to a decrease in androgen production. There is also a reduction in the output of apocrine and eccrine glands. Unlike intrinsic aging, photoaging is related to cumulative damage to the cellular constituents of the skin, at least in part at the DNA level by UV and infrared radiation [19]. Photoaging accounts for more than 90% of the skin's age-associated cosmetic problems and has become synonymous with “true chronologic aging” in the public's mind. Clinically it is characterized by coarseness, wrinkling, mottled pigmentation, solar lentigines (“age spots” or “liver spots”), laxity, telangiectasias, and atrophy. Increased numbers of benign and malignant neoplasms develop with age. A more detailed discussion concerning photoaging—its cause and possible reversal—is included in the following sections of this chapter.

## Responses to Sunlight of Human Skin

### INTRODUCTION

Exposure to sunlight can have both beneficial and harmful effects on the human body, depending on the length and frequency of exposure, the intensity of the sunlight, and the sensitivity of the individual concerned. For light to interact with any material, it needs to be absorbed. Once the light is absorbed, it raises

# Index

Note: boldface numbers indicate illustrations; (t) indicates tabular information.

- Abrasives in dry nail polishes, 596–597
- Abrasives in masks, 471
- Abrasives in toothpastes, 726, 728–730, 740–741
- Absence of nails (anonychia), 74
- Acacia gum  
as contamination source, 277  
in masks, 481
- Acetamide MEA  
as hygroscopic agent, 267 (t)  
in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646, 664  
in skin cleansers, 497
- Acetone, in nail polishes, 579
- Acetyl ethyl tetramethyl tetralin (AETT), 134
- Acetylated lanolin  
in acne products, 467  
as emulsifier, 221  
in lipsticks, 548  
in shaving preparations, 504, 506
- Acid cold wave solution, 705
- Acid hydrolysis by surfactants, 192
- Acid solubility of tooth, 90, 98–99
- Acids and antioxidants, 248
- Acne products, 142, 459–469  
active ingredients for therapy, 466  
adapalene in, 468  
adjunctive therapies and, 467–468  
alpha hydroxy acid in, 468  
antibacterial cleansing cream, 464  
antimicrobials in, 467–468  
astringent cleansers in, 465  
bentonite, 464  
benzoyl peroxide in, 465, 466, 467  
clear facial cleanser, 464  
clindamycin in, 467  
comedogenesis in, 460, 462  
comedogenicity testing of, 462, 463 (t)  
comedones in, 460, 462  
cream for, 468  
diet and, 461  
emulsion cleansers in, 463  
environmental factors in, 460  
erythromycin in, 467  
etiology of acne and, 459–461, **460**  
gel for, 468  
glycolic acid in, 468  
hexachlorophene in, 467  
hormonal influence on, 461  
isotretinoin in, 468  
lactic acid in, 468  
magnesium aluminum silicate in, 464  
oily skin treatments, 462–465  
over-the-counter (OTC) treatments vs. drugs for, 459  
pH levels and, 464  
polyethylene, 464  
pyrogenic silica in, 464  
resorcinal-sulfur lotion, 466  
resorcinol in, 466  
salicylic acid in, 466  
sebaceous gland and, 460  
sebum in, 460  
severity of, classification scale for, 461, 461 (t)  
soaps in, 463–464  
sulfur in, 465–466  
symptoms of acne and, 459–461, **460**  
talc in, 464  
tretinoin in, 468  
triclosan in, 467  
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 461  
United States regulation of, 465  
vitamin A in, 468
- Acrylamide copolymer, in shampoos, 622
- Acrylate copolymer, in foundation makeups, 529
- Acrylates, 118  
in emulsions, 226  
in foundation makeups, 538  
in hair setting/styling products, 647, 659, 661, 662  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
in shampoos, 623
- Acrylic acid, in rheological additives, 245
- Acrylic polymers, 119  
in nail polishes, 575, 577
- Acrylics, in nail polishes, 582
- ACTH, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 31
- Actinic keratosis, 33

- Actinic prurigo, 35
- Actinic reticuloids, 35
- Action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, **25**
- Actuator for aerosols, 338–339
- Acyl isethionates shampoo, 605
- Acyl phosphates, 491
- Acyl polypeptides, 491
- n-Acyl polypeptide condensates, 606
- Acyl sarcosinates, 491
- Acyl taurates, 491
- Acylation of amino acids, in surfactants, 197
- Acylation of collagen, in shampoos, 622
- Acylation of peptides, 197
- Acylglyceride sulfonates, 199
- Acyloxyalkyl, in shaving preparations, 505
- Adapalene, in acne products, 468
- Adhesion of hair, 50
- Adipates, in nail polishes, 577
- Adsorption, 192, 193
  - Gibbs adsorption equation for surfactants, 187–189, 191, 193, 216
  - in surfactants, 192, 193
- Adulteration in, 132–133
- Advertising practices, U.S. regulation and, 146
- Aerosol technology, 120–121, 333–347
  - actuator for, 338–339
  - alternatives to, 344–347
  - antiperspirants and deodorants, use for, 450–451
  - atmos dispensing system vs., 346
  - bag-in-a-can spray systems vs., 345
  - “blooming” gels, 509–510
  - butane propellant for, 339
  - chlorofluorocarbons as propellants for, 340
  - co-dispensing systems vs., 347
  - cold filling process for, 343
  - components of, 334
  - compressed gas propellant for, 343
  - containers for, 334–336, **335**
  - corrosion inhibitors in, 508
  - crimping of valve to container in, 338, 339 (*t*)
  - definition of, 334
  - dimethyl ether (DME) propellant for, 341
  - dry spray dispensers vs., 346–347
  - EP spray system vs., 346
  - F-Z finger pump foamer system vs., 347
  - filling of, 343
  - hair setting/styling products, 653, 658–663
  - head space in, 344
  - history of, 333–334
  - hot water bath testing of, 344
  - hydrocarbon propellants for, 339–341
  - hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) propellants for, 341–342
  - internal can pressures, 508
  - Lechner spray system vs., 346
  - operation of, 344, **345**
  - piston spray system vs., 346
  - post-foaming shave gels, 509–510
  - pressure filling process for, 344
  - principles of, 334
  - propane propellant for, 339
  - propellants for, 339–343, 507
  - pump-activated spray systems vs., 346–347
  - sepro can spray systems vs., 345–346
  - shaving foams, 505–509
  - spray rates, 508
  - stability testing of, 347
  - sunscreens, 431
  - under-the-cup filling process for, 343
  - valves used in, 336–338, **337**
  - volatile organic compounds (VOC) and, 507, 510, 515
- After-shave products
  - balms, 517–520
  - gels, 517
  - lotion, 131, 515–520
  - powders, 520
- Age-related cutaneous differences in skin sensitivity, 764
- Aggregation of particles, 791
- Aggregation structures in surfactants, 191
- Aging of skin, 20–22, 21 (*t*)
- Agitation and flow pattern, 802–808, 810–813
- Agitation and rheological additive, 241–242
- of emulsions, 214–215, 222–223
- Al/Mg hydroxide stearate, as rheological additive, 243
- Alcohol, 119, 121
  - in after-shave products, 515–518
  - in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454, 455
  - as emulsifier, 221
  - comedogenicity of, 463
  - in emulsions, 220, 229
  - in hair setting/styling products, 641, 648
  - in hair straighteners, 711
  - in mouthwashes, 746
  - in nail polishes, 578
  - in preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
  - as rheological additive, 235
  - in shampoos, 623
  - in shaving preparations, 513
  - in skin cleansers, 383, 498, 499, 500
  - in surfactants, 199, 200, 203, 206
- Alfalfa, 316, 318
- Algae, 316, 318, 319
- Alginate, 226
- Alginic acid, 311
  - as hydrophilic polymer, 268
- Alizarin, 317
- Alkalies
  - as antioxidants, 248
  - effect on hair, 63–64
  - for hair waving, 689, 690, 700
  - in shaving preparations, 503
- Alkali hydroxides, in cuticle removers, 589
- Alkaline cold wave solution, 705
- Alkaline earths, in foundation makeups, 524
- Alkannin, 319
- Alkanoic acids, in surfactants, 197–198

- Alkanolamide  
   as anionic surfactant, 491  
   in hair colorants/dyes, 687  
   in shampoos, 603  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
   in surfactants, 195, 203–204
- Alkanolamines, 151  
   in cuticle removers, 590
- Alkylamido alkylamines, in skin  
   cleansers, 493
- Alkoxylated alcohols, in  
   shampoos, 608
- Alkoxylated amines (*See*  
   Surfactants, 201)
- Alkyl aryl sulfonates, microbial  
   growth in, 281
- Alkyl benzoate, in  
   antiperspirants/deodorants,  
   451, 456
- Alkyl dimethicone, in  
   moisturizers, 265
- Alkyl dimethicone copolyols, in  
   foundation makeups, 536
- Alkyl ether sulfates  
   as anionic surfactant, 491  
   in shampoos, 602–604  
   in surfactants, 199, 200, 199
- Alkyl galactomannan  
   in emulsions, 226  
   in foundation makeup, 538
- Alkyl glucosides (*See*  
   Surfactants)  
   in skin cleansers, 494
- Alkyl halides, in hairs, 66
- Alkyl methicone, in foundation  
   makeups, 541
- Alkyl phenoxyethanols,  
   microbial growth in, 281
- Alkyl phosphates, as anionic  
   surfactant, 491
- Alkyl silanes, in foundation  
   makeups, 542
- Alkyl substituted amino acids,  
   196, 609
- Alkyl sulfates  
   as anionic surfactant, 491  
   in emulsions, 227  
   microbial growth in, 281  
   in shampoos, 602–604  
   in skin cleansers, 488  
   in surfactants, 192, 199–200
- Alkyl titanate, in foundation  
   makeup, 542
- Alkyl triethoxysilane, in  
   foundation makeups, 530
- Alkylacrylate cross polymers, in  
   emulsions, 222
- Alkylamido alkyl amines, in  
   surfactants, 196
- Alkylamines, in surfactants, 201
- Alkylated amino acids, in skin  
   cleansers, 493
- Alkylauryl sulfonates  
   as anionic surfactant, 491  
   in surfactants, 198, 199
- Alkylene dihalides, in permanent  
   waves, 699
- Alkylether sulfonates, in  
   surfactants, 199
- Alkylimidazolines, in  
   surfactants, 201
- All-purpose creams, 360
- Allantoin  
   in after-shave products, 516,  
   518  
   in antiperspirants/deodorants,  
   451  
   in hair setting/styling  
   products, 641  
   in over-the-counter remedies,  
   402, 403
- Allergic reactions  
   in ocular tissues and eyes,  
   84–85  
   in skin, 15, 758–759
- Allergic contact dermatitis,  
   758–759
- Alloantigen, UV-mediated  
   immunosuppression and,  
   32
- Almond glycerides, in hair  
   setting/styling products,  
   640, 641, 664
- Almond oil, 329
- Aloe vera, 311, 320, 472, 504
- Alopecia, 43, 44
- Alopecia androgenetica, 44
- Alopecia areata, 44
- Alpha hydroxy acid usage, 34,  
   132, 138, 379, 468, 471
- Alpha lipoic acid, as antioxidant,  
   256
- Alpha tocopherol, as antioxidant,  
   306
- Alpha-methylheptadecyl glyceryl  
   ether (GE), 328
- Alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS),  
   in shampoos, 604
- Alum nail strengthener, 594
- Alumina toothpaste, 730
- Aluminum acetate, 412
- Aluminum chlorhydrate, in  
   shaving preparations,  
   513
- Aluminum chloride, in  
   antiperspirants and  
   deodorants, 440, 441, 442,  
   447, 448
- Aluminum chlorohydrate  
   (ACH), 440–442, 447, 448,  
   451
- Aluminum dichlorohydrate, 441,  
   442, 447, 448
- Aluminum hydroxide gel, 402,  
   403
- Aluminum hydroxide, abrasive  
   in toothpastes, 730
- Aluminum lakes in mascaras,  
   563
- Aluminum magnesium  
   hydroxide stearate,  
   thickener, 245–246
- Aluminum salts, in after-shave  
   products, 517
- Aluminum sesquichlorohydrate,  
   in antiperspirants and  
   deodorants, 441, 442, 447,  
   448
- Aluminum silicates in  
   emulsions, 225
- Aluminum sulfate, 412  
   in antiperspirants and  
   deodorants, 441, 442, 447,  
   448
- in nail strengtheners, 594
- Aluminum zirconium  
   chlorohydrate-GLY (AZG),  
   440–441, 448, 452–455  
   octachlorohydrate, 441, 442,  
   447, 448  
   pentachlorohydrate, 441, 442,  
   447, 448  
   tetrachlorohydrate, 441, 442,  
   447, 448  
   tetrachlorohydrate, 453  
   trichlorohydrate, 441, 442,  
   447, 448
- Amaranth, 317

- Amides and microbial growth  
in, 281  
in surfactants, 203
- Amines, 134, 138  
in foundation makeups, 534  
in surfactants, 199, 201, 203
- Amine oxides  
in shampoos, 606, 607, 622  
in skin cleansers, 494  
in surfactants, 204
- Amino acids  
acylated, 197 (*See also*  
Surfactants)  
alkyl substituted, 196  
in foundation makeups, 530  
in hair, 46–48, 67, 68  
as humectants, 365  
as components of natural  
moisturizing factor (NMF),  
267  
in skin care products, 365
- Amino derivatives, 134, 138
- Amino-2-hydroxytoluene, in  
permanent hair colors, 689
- Aminoanthraquinones, in hair  
colorants/dyes, 676,  
679–680
- Aminobenzoic acid, in  
sunscreens, 417, 420
- Aminoethylpropanediol, in  
semipermanent hair colors,  
682
- Aminomethane, in permanent  
waves, 699
- t*-4-Aminomethyl-  
cyclohexanecarboxylic acid  
(*t*-AMCHA), 386
- Aminomethyl propanol, in hair  
setting/styling products,  
644, 659, 660–662, 665,  
688
- m*-Aminophenol, in permanent  
hair colors, 684, 689, 690
- o*-Aminophenol, in permanent  
hair colors, 683
- p*-Aminophenol, in permanent  
hair colors, 683
- Aminoplastic packaging, 880
- Ammonia, in permanent hair  
colors, 689
- Ammonium alum, use in nail  
strengtheners, 594
- Ammonium bicarbonate, 705,  
706
- Ammonium bisulfite, in hair  
straighteners, 713
- Ammonium carbonate, in  
permanent waves, 700
- Ammonium chloride  
in shampoos, 625  
in skin cleansers, 497  
in surfactants, 201
- Ammonium hydroxide, 705, 706  
in hair setting/styling  
products, 662  
in permanent hair colors, 690  
in permanent waves, 700
- Ammonium laureth sulfate, in  
skin cleansers, 497
- Ammonium lauryl sulfate, in  
shampoos, 625, 629
- Ammonium lauryl  
sulfosuccinate, in acne  
products, 464
- Ammonium thioglycolate, 705,  
706
- Amodimethicone, in hair  
setting/styling products, 655
- Amorphous hydrocarbon waxes,  
in lipsticks, 549
- Amphiphilic surfactants,  
187–189, 208, 214, 232
- Amphoteric surfactants, 195, 196  
alkylamido alkylamines as in,  
493  
alkylated amino acids in, 493  
in emulsions, 217 (*t*)  
in skin cleansers, 493  
in shampoos, 608–609
- Amyl acetate, in nail polishes,  
579
- Amylase, microbial growth in,  
281
- Anagen (active) phase of hair  
growth, 41–42, 42
- Anagen effluvium, 44
- Analgesic preparations, external,  
143
- Androgens and hair, 43
- Anhydrosorbitol, in shampoos,  
607
- Anhydrous (wax-based) blush,  
562
- Anhydrous calcium chloride, in  
permanent waves, 704
- Anhydrous formulations of  
foundation makeups, 526,  
530, 541–543
- Anhydrous mascara, 564, 565
- Anhydrous oils, in skin care  
products, 361
- Anhydrous systems of  
rheological additives, 243
- Animal lipids, 329–331
- Animal rights, U.S. regulation  
and, 129
- Animal testing, 768–769  
status in labeling, 159,  
161–162
- Anionic surfactants, 195,  
191–192, 196–200, 208  
in emulsions, 216, 217 (*t*)  
isethionates in, 493  
micelle formation in, 191  
microbial growth in, 281  
phosphates in, 493  
in shampoos, 602–606, 602  
in skin cleansers, 490–493,  
490  
in shaving preparations, 511  
in soaps, 492  
sulfates in, 492  
sulfonates in, 492–493
- Annatto, 316, 317
- Annexes of Cosmetic Directive,  
E.U. regulation of  
cosmetics, 149, 153–155
- Anterior chamber of eyes, 80
- Anthocyanidin antioxidants, 255,  
317
- Anthocyanin, 316
- Antibacterial cleansing cream,  
464
- Antistatic agents in hair  
setting/styling products, 639
- Antiwrinkle creams, 377–379
- Antibacterial mouthwashes, 745
- Anticalculus agents in  
toothpastes, 96, 736
- Anticholinergic activity  
mechanism of sweat  
reductions, 440
- Antidandruff shampoos and  
lotions, 142, 165, 630,  
408–412
- Antifrizz gel, 646
- Antimelanogenic skin whitening  
agents, 396 (*t*)

- Antimicrobials**, 142, 144–145  
   surfactants as, 193, 201–202  
   preservatives, 273  
   in acne products, 467–468  
   in mouthwashes, 748  
   in skin care products, 362, 368  
   in skin cleansers, 495, 496  
   in toothpastes, 727, 736
- Antioxidants**, 247–259, 378, 385  
   acids and, 248  
   alkalis and, 248  
   alpha lipoic acid as, 256  
   anthocyanidin as, 255  
   apigenin as, 255  
   arbutin as, 252  
   ascorbic acid as, 255–256  
   ascorbyl palmitate as, 256  
   auto-oxidation reactions in, 249  
   beta carotene as, 257  
   BHA as, 252  
   BHT as, 252  
   botanicals as sources of, 312, 312 (*t*)  
   *t*-butyl hydroquinone as, 252  
   caffeic acid as, 256  
   carotenoids as, 256, 257  
   catalase as, 256  
   catechin as, 255  
   chain propagation reactions in, 249  
   chlorogenic acid as, 256  
   cyanidin as, 255  
   cysteine hydrochloride as, 256  
   desferrioximine as, 249  
   diosmin as, 255  
   dithiothreitol as, 256  
   EDTA as, 249  
   in emulsions, 231  
   enzymes as, 256  
   epicatechin as, 255  
   epicatechin gallate as, 255  
   epigallocatechin as, 255  
   epigallocatechin gallate as, 255  
   Fenton reaction in, 250 in, 251  
   ferulic acid as, 256  
   flavonoids as, 253–255  
   free radical formation in, 248–249  
   gallic acid as, 256  
   genistein as, 255  
   glutathione as, 256  
   gossypol as, 252  
   Haber/Weiss reaction in, 251  
   hesperidine as, 255  
   hydrogen peroxide in, 250, 251  
   hydroperoxides in, 248, 249  
   hydroquinone as, 252  
   hydroxyanisole as, 252  
   hydroxyl radical in, 249–251  
   isoflavones as, 255  
   kaempferol as, 255  
   kojic acid as, 252  
   lipid peroxide (LOOH) in, 251  
   lipid peroxy radicals (LOO $\cdot$ ), 252  
   malvidin as, 255  
   myricetin as, 255  
   naringin as, 255  
   nordihydroguaiaretic acid as, 252, 253  
   one-electron oxidation and, 249  
   oxygen reactions and, 247  
   peroxide value (POV) for, 258  
   peroxides in, 248, 250  
   phenolic antioxidants in, 251–253  
   phospholipids as, 257  
   photo-oxidation and, 250  
   phytates as, 249  
   plant-derived antioxidants in, 253  
   protocatechuic acid as, 256  
   quercetin as, 255  
   reactive oxygen species (ROS) actions in, 250–251, 258  
   resorcylic acid as, 256  
   reversing photoaging of skin with, 34  
   rosmarinic acid as, 252, 253  
   selection criteria/recommendations for, 257–258  
   in shaving preparations, 507  
   singlet oxygen in, 249–250  
   in shampoos, 623–624  
   in skin care, 362, 372, 373  
   stability and, 247  
   sulfur as, 256  
   superoxide in, 249, 250, 251, 256  
   temperature effects on, 249  
   thiodipropionic acid as, 256  
   thioglycolic acid as, 256  
   tocopherol as, 252, 253  
   trolox as, 252, 253  
   type I oxidative reactions, 247–249  
   type II oxidative reactions, 250–251  
   ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 247–248, 250, 256  
   unsaturated vs.  
     polyunsaturated materials in, 258  
   use of, 251  
   vitamin E as, 252  
   xanthines as, 256
- Antiperspirants and deodorants**, 119, 120, 142, 144, 164, 204, 437–457  
   aerosol/pump spray type, 450–451  
   aluminum chloride in, 440, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum chlorohydrate (ACH) in, 440–442, 447, 448  
   aluminum dichlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum sesquichlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum sulfate in, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum zirconium chlorohydrate-GLY (AZG) in, 440–441, 448  
   aluminum zirconium octachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum zirconium pentachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448  
   aluminum zirconium tetrachlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448



- Antiperspirants and deodorants  
(*cont.*)
- aluminum zirconium trichlorohydrate in, 441, 442, 447, 448
  - analytical evaluation of, 448–449
  - anticholinergic activity mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - axillary sweat measurement protocols for, 444–446
  - bacteria associated with perspiration and odor in, 439
  - clinical evaluation of, 442–443, **443**, 447
  - criteria for, 449
  - deodorancy in, 446–447
  - deodorant formulations, 455–456
  - drug classification of antiperspirants, 437, 449
  - efficacy of, 441, 442–443, **443**
  - electropositive charge mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - extrudable gel type, 454–455
  - formulations of, 449–456
  - ingredients for, 441, 447–448
  - keratin plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - leaky hose mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - modified occlusive plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - molding/filling, 845–846
  - occlusive plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
  - odor masking/disguise techniques in, 446
  - odor prevention techniques in, 446
  - odor reduction/removal techniques in, 446
  - oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 453
  - perspiration physiology and, 438–441
  - reducing sweat, mechanisms for, 439–441
  - rheological additives for, 240, 244, 245
  - roll-on type, 453–454
  - safety of, 441
  - silicones in, 450
  - soft solid type, 454–455
  - solid/stick type, 451–453
  - suspending agents in, 451
  - sweat composition and, 438–439
  - triclosan in, 455
  - United States regulation (OTC) of, 441–442
  - water-in-silicone emulsions, 453
- Antiseptics
- in hand washes, 405
  - in mouthwashes, 747
  - in skin products, 403–407
- Aphthous ulcers (canker sores), 92, 106
- Apigenin, 255, 317
- Apocrine glands, 12, 18, 80, 438–439
- Appendageal structures of skin, 11–13
- Apricot kernel oil, 308
- Arachidyl behenate, in moisturizers, 265
- Arachidyl propionate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
- Arbutin, 252, 312, 397
- Argillaceous earth (clay) masks, 473–478
- Aromatherapy, 389
- Aromatics, in nail polishes, 578
- Arrector pili muscle of hair, **40**
- Arsenic, in hair, 49
- Articles of Cosmetics Directive in E.U. regulation of cosmetics, 149
- Artificial nail use, 74, 75, 598
- Aryl sulfonamide resin, in nail polishes, 577
- Ascorbic acid, 368
- as antioxidant, 255–256, 312
- Ascorbyl palmitate
- as antioxidant, 256
  - in emulsifier, 221
  - in lipsticks, 551
- Aspergillus*, as test of preservative efficacy, 297
- Associative structures in surfactants, 191
- Astringent cleanser, 465
- Astringents, 142, 412, 465
- in after-shave products, 516, 517
  - in masks, 477
- Athlete's foot products, 300
- Atmos dispensing system, 346
- Atrophy of skin, 33, 34
- Auto-oxidation reactions in antioxidants, 249
- Auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691
- Auxiliaries in emulsions, 212, 225–226
- Avobenzene in sunscreens, 142, 417–418, 420
- Avocado wax, 308
- Axial flow, 802, **803**
- Axillary region hair, 41
- Azadioxabicyclooctane, in permanent waves, 699
- Azelaic acid, 397
- Azulene, 317
- Baby (tearless) shampoos, 608, 625, 626
- Baby powder, 120, 131
- Bacteria associated with perspiration and odor, 439
- Bacteria vs. preservatives, 274–276, 284
- Bacterial or microbial flora of mouth, 92, 93–94, 95, 98, 103–105
- Bacteroides forsythus* as agent of periodontitis in oral care, 101
- Bad breath, 103–105
- Bag-in-a-can aerosol systems, 345
- Ball mills, 832–835, **833**
- Banana, 310
- Bandrowski's base for hair colorants/dyes, 685
- Banned substances, in E.U. regulation of, 150, 151
- Barium hydroxide in depilatories, 721
- Barium salts in permanent waves, 699

- Barrier function of skin, 9,  
16–17, 351, 354–357, **355**,  
367  
vs. emulsions, 232
- Basal cell carcinoma, 28
- Basal lamina in skin, 5
- Basal layer of epidermis in  
skin, 4
- Base nail polish, 584
- Basement membrane in skin, 3,  
387, 388
- Basement membrane of hair, **40**
- Basil oil, 313
- Batch emulsion processor,  
819–822, **820**  
batch numbers in labeling,  
157–158
- Batch turnover rate, 848
- Bath capsules, 131
- Bath oil, 131, 222
- Bath powder, 120, 131, 164
- Bath preparations, 164, 166
- Bath salts, 131
- Bath soaps, 131
- Bayberry wax, 309
- Beard softeners, 131, 501–502
- Beau's lines, 76
- Beeswax  
in eyeliners, 569  
in foundation makeups, 537  
in hair setting/styling  
products, 664  
in lipsticks, 549  
in mascaras, 564, 565, 566  
in skin care, 370, 371, 372,  
376
- Bending properties of hair, 50,  
56
- Bentonite, 118, 378  
in acne products, 464, 466  
in emulsions, 225  
in masks, 473, 474–476, 478,  
482  
rheological properties of,  
244
- Benzalkonium chloride, 201  
in nail strengtheners, 595  
in over-the-counter remedies,  
404  
as preservative, 286, 287, 289
- Benzene, in permanent hair  
colors, 683
- Benzene ring sunscreens, 418
- Benzethonium chloride, 286, 287
- Benzoic acid, 749  
in foundation makeups, 536  
in mouthwashes, 749, 750,  
751  
as preservative, 286, 287, 289,  
295, 301, 312
- Benzoin in nail polishes, 577
- Benzophenone  
in hair setting/styling  
products, 641  
in nail polishes, 582  
in shampoos, 624
- Benzoyl peroxide  
in acne products, 465–468  
in masks, 477
- Benzyl alcohol  
in foundation makeups, 535  
as preservative, 286, 287, 295,  
312
- Bergamot oil, 313
- Berloque dermatitis, 35
- Beta carotene, 316  
as antioxidant, 257  
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and,  
24
- Beta endorphin, ultraviolet (UV)  
radiation and, 27, 31
- Beta hydroxy acid, 471
- Beta sitosterol, 330
- Betaglucan, as hydrophilic  
polymer, 268
- Betaine  
use in skin cleansers, 494,  
497–499  
use in shampoos, 608–609,  
622  
use in shaving preparations,  
504  
use in surfactants, 202
- Betanines, 316, 317
- BHA/BHT  
antioxidants, 252, 253  
in lipsticks, 551  
in shampoos, 623
- Bicarbonate, in saliva, 91
- Bilirubin, ultraviolet (UV)  
radiation and, 24
- Binders, 856–857  
in foundation makeups, 538,  
539
- Bioflavonoids, 317
- Bisabolol, 306, 504  
in after-shave products, 516  
in skin cleansers, 496
- Bismuth oxychloride  
in blushers, 561  
in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
in foundation makeups, 524,  
529, 538  
in lipsticks, 546  
in mascaras, 563  
in nail polishes, 581
- Bisulfites, in hair products, 63
- Bithionol, 134
- Black currant seed oil, 309, 329
- Black pepper oil, 313
- Black walnut, 318
- Bleaches  
hair, 67, 131, 692–694  
nails, 591–592  
skin bleaches, 394–398  
skin bleaches, masks, 477  
teeth, 103  
toothpaste, 735
- Blending equipment, 853–857
- Blink reflex in ocular tissues and  
eyes, 80, 83
- Blood flow testing, 776
- “Blooming” gels, 509–510
- Blow-dry lotion, 643
- Blue gardenia, 317
- “Blue sky” research in new  
product developments, 112
- Blusher pencils, 567–568
- Blushers and rouge (foundation  
makeup), 131, 560–562  
(*See also* Surfactants;  
Colorants)  
anhydrous (wax-based) blush,  
562  
colorants for, 560  
pressed powder blush,  
560–562
- Body creams, 382
- Body of hair, 632
- Body lotion, 131
- Body powder, 164
- Body shampoo/wash, 144, 497,  
498
- Borage seed oil, 329
- Borate, in hair setting/styling  
products, 662
- Borax, in permanent waves, 700

- Boric acid, as preservative, 286, 287
- Borohydride, for hair reduction, 63
- Boronitride  
in eyeshadows, 570  
in foundation makeups, 524, 529, 530, 540, 541
- Botanicals, 305–321  
antioxidants from, 312, 312 (*t*)  
available sources of, 306  
colorants from, 316–319, 316 (*t*)  
defining botanicals, 305–306  
dry extracts of, 307  
emulsifiers from, 311  
extracts of, 306–308  
fragrant plant constituents of, 313–315  
in hair setting/styling products, 641  
lipid plant constituents as, 308–310  
lipid sources of, 329–330  
liquid extracts of, 307  
moisturizing agents from, 310–311  
“natural product” defined, 305–306  
“naturally derived” defined, 305  
“nature identical” defined, 306  
nonlipid plant constituents as, 310–313  
plant-derived raw materials as, 308–310  
preservatives from, 307, 312  
raw material identification in, 307–308  
skin-soothing/beneficial plant extracts, 319–320, 368  
soft extracts of, 307  
sunscreens from, 313  
thickeners from, 311  
UV absorbers from, 313  
water-soluble fragrances from, 315
- Bottles, plastic bottles, 878
- Bowman’s layer in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Brazil nut oil, 309
- Breath-freshening properties of toothpastes, 742
- Breath-freshening properties of mouthwashes, 752
- Breath mints, 104, 105
- Breath sprays/drops, 104, 105, 131, 753
- Brevibacterium* spp.,  
perspiration odor and, 439
- Brilliantine, 664
- British Pharmacopoeia (BP), 297, 298
- Brittleness of nails, 75
- Bromates use  
in hair, 67  
in permanent waves, 704
- Bromide, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Bromo-2-nitropropane, 134, 286, 287
- Bromo-5-nitro, 286, 287
- Bromoacid solvents for lipstick, 547, 548
- Brookfield Viscometer to measure rheological additive, 238–239
- Brownian motion, 225–227, 792
- Brukholderia*, as contaminant, 283
- Brushing teeth, 96, 98, 742–743
- Brushless shave creams, 510–511
- Bubble bath, 496
- Buffered cold wave solution, 705
- Buffers  
in mouthwashes, 749  
in skin care products, 362
- Buffing powders for nails, 596–597
- Bulb, follicular bulb of hair, 39, 40
- Bulbar conjunctiva of eyes, 80
- Bunte Salt in hair wavings, 63–65, 698
- Burns to skin, 20
- Butane propellant, 339, 653, 660–662
- Butane diol, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Buteth 16, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Butoxyethyl stearate, in skin cleansers, 497
- Butters, botanicals as source of, 308
- Butyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- sec butyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- t*-Butylcatechol, 397
- t*-Butyl ester, in hair setting/styling products, 644, 659, 661
- t*-Butyl hydroquinone as antioxidant, 252
- Butyl hydroxytoluene, in shaving preparations, 507
- Butyl lactate, in nail polishes, 579
- Butyl maleate, in hair setting/styling products, 659
- Butyl resorcinol, 397
- Butyl stearate, in skin care, 380
- Butylaminoethyl methacrylate, in hair setting/styling products, 661
- Butylated PVP, in hair setting/styling products, 664
- Butylene glycol  
in acne products, 464  
in eyeliners, 569  
in foundation makeups, 534, 537  
in hair setting/styling products, 665  
as humectant, 269  
in masks, 477, 480, 481  
as preservative, 294  
in shampoos, 623  
in shaving preparations, 503  
in skin care, 380, 383
- Butylparaben  
in hair setting/styling products, 649  
as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- C-30-40 alkyl methicone foundation makeup, 541
- C-S scission in hair chemistry, 67, 68
- C12-15 alkyl benzoate, as emulsifier, 221
- C30-40 alkyl dimethicone, in moisturizers, 265
- Cabbage rose water, 315
- Cadmium, in hair, 49

- Café au lait mixture, 791
- Caffeic acid as antioxidant, 256, 312
- Cake (block) mascara, 564
- Calamine, in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- Calcitonin gene-related peptide, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Calcium  
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94  
 in hair, 49  
 as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267  
 oral care, 97  
 in saliva, 91  
 in skin care products, 356
- Calcium carbonate  
 in blushers, 561  
 in dental products, 739  
 in foundation makeups, 538  
 in toothpastes, 729
- Calcium chloride, in permanent waves, 704
- Calcium hydroxide  
 in depilatories, 719, 720, 721  
 in hair straighteners, 712
- Calcium in nails, 73
- Calcium in skin, 356
- Calcium in tooth, 90–91
- Calcium peroxide toothpaste, 730
- Calcium pyrophosphate toothpaste, 729
- Calcium silicate  
 in eyeshadows, 571  
 in foundation makeups, 529, 538
- Calcium thioglycolate, in depilatories, 719, 720
- Calculus (tartar) deposits on teeth, 93, 94, 96
- Callus, 20, 261
- Callus removers, 412–413
- Calorimetry to establish HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Camellia sinesis oil, 309, 312
- Camphor, in shaving preparations, 513
- Camphorated metacresol, in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Camphorated phenols in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Cancer of skin, 20
- Candelilla wax, 309  
 in lipsticks, 549  
 in mascaras, 565, 566
- Candida albicans*  
 as contaminant, 283  
 in nail infections, 75, 77  
 in ocular tissues infections, 85  
 as test of preservative efficacy, 297  
 UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Canker sores in oral care, 92, 106
- Capacitance testing, 774–775
- Capillary flow and surfactants, 193–194
- Capillary in skin, 4
- Caprylic/capric triglyceride as emulsifier, 221  
 in lipsticks, 548  
 in skin cleansers, 498
- Caprylyl silane in foundation makeups, 541
- Caps and lids, 885–886
- Capsanthin, 316, 318
- Capsorubin, 316, 318
- Capsules, 120
- Captan, 286, 287
- Caramel, 318
- Carbohydrate esters in surfactants, 205–206
- Carbohydrate synthesis inhibitor, 397
- Carbohydrates  
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94  
 microbial growth in, 280
- Carbomer  
 in after-shave products, 517  
 in emulsions, 226  
 in hair setting/styling products, 647, 650, 665  
 in masks, 481  
 in shampoos, 623  
 in skin care, 375, 498, 499  
 in toothpastes, 733
- Carbon black, in mascaras, 563
- Carboxyl groups, microbial growth in, 281
- Carboxylic acid  
 in shampoos, 606  
 in surfactants, 197–198, 206
- Carboxymethylcellulose, microbial growth in, 281
- Carcinogenic compounds, 147
- Carcinomas, 28
- Caries (decay) in tooth, 90, 92, 95–99
- Carmine, in mascaras, 563
- Carnauba wax, 309  
 as emulsifier, 221  
 in eyeliners, 569  
 in eyeshadows, 571  
 in hair setting/styling products, 652  
 in lipsticks, 549  
 in mascaras, 564, 565, 566
- Carotenes, 318, 368
- Carotenoids as antioxidants, 256–257
- Carrageenan  
 in emulsions, 226  
 in masks, 477, 481  
 rheological properties of, 244  
 in toothpastes, 732
- Carthamin, 318
- Casein, in masks, 481
- Castor oil, 309  
 as emulsifier, 221  
 in foundation makeups, 537  
 in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 654, 664  
 in lipsticks, 548  
 in permanent waves, 700  
 in shampoos, 622
- Catagen phase of hair growth, 41–42, 42
- Catalase as antioxidant, 256
- Cataracts, 28
- Catechin as antioxidant, 255
- Categories of OTC drugs, 142–143
- Categories of cosmetics, 131
- Cationic cellulose shampoo, 622
- Cationic quaternary antibacterials in mouthwashes, 748
- Cationic surfactants, 195, 200–202, 208  
 in emulsions, 216, 217 (*t*), 218

- Cationic surfactants (*cont.*)  
in masks, 478  
as preservatives, 292  
in shampoos, 609
- Caustic preparations for hair straighteners, 709–710
- Cavitation of liquids, 823
- Cedarwood oil, 313
- Cell membrane complex (CMC) of hair, 44, 44–46, 61
- Cellulase, microbial growth in, 281
- Cellulose, 119, 311  
in acne products, 468  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
as rheological additive, 244  
in shampoos, 622, 623  
in toothpastes, 737
- Cellulose gum  
rheological properties of, 244  
in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 535  
in toothpastes, 732
- Cellulosics, 226, 243
- Celosia, 317
- Cemento-enamel junction in tooth, 89, 89, 90
- Cementosomes (*See* Odland bodies)
- Cementum in tooth, 89, 89, 101–102
- Ceramic composites, in foundation makeups, 529
- Ceramides, 6, 9, 16, 327–329
- Ceresin  
eyeshadow, 571  
lipstick, 549  
in skin care, 373
- Cerotic acid, in skin care, 370
- Ceteareth-20  
in acne products, 468  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
- Cetearyl alcohol  
in acne products, 468  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455  
in emulsions, 227, 228, 229  
in skin care, 374
- Ceteth-8, as emulsifier, 219
- Ceteth-20  
as emulsifier, 219  
hair setting/styling products, 644
- Ceteth-25, in skin care, 380
- Cetrimide, as preservative, 290
- Cetrimonium chloride (CTAC)  
in hair setting/styling products, 640, 643  
in shampoos, 616–617, 629
- Cetyl acetate  
in acne products, 467  
in shaving preparations, 504
- Cetyl alcohol  
in depilatories, 719  
in eyeliners, 569  
in foundation makeups, 534  
in hair straighteners, 711, 712  
in shampoos, 623  
in skin care, 372, 373, 377, 382, 384  
surfactants, 206
- Cetyl dimethicone, in foundation makeups, 537
- Cetyl esters, in skin care, 371, 498
- Cetyl hydroxyethyl cellulose in emulsions, 222
- Cetyl iso-octanoate, in skin care, 381
- Cetyldimethicone copolyol at water/oil interface in emulsions, 229
- Cetylpyridinium chloride (CPC),  
in cuticle softeners, 591  
in oral care, 100, 737, 748, 750  
as preservative, 293
- Cetyltrimonium chloride, in shampoos, 629
- Chain propagation reactions in antioxidants, 249
- Chalk  
as contamination source, 277  
preservative action on, 294  
in shaving preparations, 514  
in toothpastes, 729
- Chamomile, 306, 313, 315, 317, 320, 397, 504
- Chelating agents, in skin care, 362, 375, 383
- Chemical heating methods (heating packages), 701
- Chemical properties of hair, 61–69
- Chemical reaction of pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- Chemically treated hair and shampoo, 617
- China clay in masks, 473
- Chitosan, as hydrophilic polymer, 268
- Chlorbutanol, 152
- Chlorhexidine  
as preservative, 286, 287, 295  
as preventive of gingivitis in oral care, 100  
in toothpastes, 737
- Chloride, in saliva, 91
- Chlorine dioxide in mouthwashes, 749
- Chloroacetic acid, in surfactants, 202
- Chlorofluorocarbon propellants, 134, 340
- Chloroform, 134
- Chlorogenic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Chloroisocyanurates nail bleach, 592
- Chloromethyl isothiazolone shampoo, 624
- p*-Chloro-*m*-cresol, 286–287
- Chlorophyll, 250, 316, 318
- Chlorophyllin copper, 318
- Chloroxyleneol  
in acne products, 464  
as preservative, 286, 287  
in skin cleansers, 496
- Chlorphenesin, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Cholecalciferol, 368
- Cholesterol  
in nail creams, 593  
in shaving preparations, 511  
in skin, 13, 16, 353
- Cholesteryl oleate, in moisturizers, 265
- Chondroitin sulfate, in skin, 18
- Chromium oxide  
in lipsticks, 546  
in mascaras, 563
- Chromophores in skin, 23
- Chronologic aging of skin, 20–22, 21 (*t*), 263
- Chymase, 15
- Ciliary bodies of eyes, 80
- Cinnamon, 314

- Cinoxate as sunscreen, 417, 420  
 Citrates in nail polishes, 577  
 Citric acid, 628  
   in acne products, 465, 468  
   in hair setting/styling products, 641  
   in lipsticks, 551  
   in nail bleaches, 592  
   in permanent hair colors, 690  
   in shampoos, 624, 625  
   in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499  
 Citrulline in hair, 48  
*Cladosporium* spp., 276, 283  
 Clarifying agents in shampoos, 623  
 Clary sage oil, 314  
 Clays  
   in emulsions, 225  
   in foundation makeups, 535, 538  
   in mascaras, 565, 566  
   in masks, 471, 472–478, 482  
   in nail polishes, 583  
   as rheological additive, 235, 240, 243, 244  
   in skin care, 381  
   in toothpastes, 733  
 Cleaning (basic) shampoo formula, 625  
 Cleansers, 118, 166  
 Cleansing and moisturizing liquid, 499  
 Cleansing creams, lotions, liquids, 131, 360  
 Cleansing pads, 131  
 Clear emulsions, 212, 230, 232  
 Clear facial cleanser, 464  
 Clear nail base coat, 584  
 Clear nail top coat, 585  
 Climbazole, in dandruff products, 408, 409, 411  
 Clindamycin, in acne products, 467  
 Closures, 885–886  
 Clove oil, 314  
 Clover, 319, 320  
 Coal tar, 151, 408, 409, 411  
 Coalescence of droplets in emulsions, 218  
 Coarseness of skin, 22, 33, 34  
 Cocamide DEA, 628  
   in semipermanent hair colors, 682  
   in shampoos, 622, 625, 627  
   in skin cleansers, 497  
 Cocamide MEA, in skin cleansers, 498  
 Cocamidopropyl amineoxide, in skin cleansers, 497  
 Cocamidopropyl betaine  
   in dandruff products, 410  
   in permanent hair color, 690  
   in shampoos, 603, 625, 629  
   in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499  
 Cocamidopropyl hydroxysultaine, 626  
 Cocamidopropyl surfactants, 201, 204, 608  
 Cochineal mascara, 563  
 Coco caprylate/caprate  
   in makeups, 539, 542, 548  
   in lipsticks, 548  
 Cocoa butter, 309  
   as emulsifier, 221  
   comedogenicity of, 463  
   in lipsticks, 550  
   in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
 Cocomonium chloride, 630  
 Coconut alcohol in depilatories, 719  
 Coconut fatty acid, in shaving preparations, 502, 510  
 Coconut oil, 309  
   as emulsifier, 221  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
 Cocoyl hydrolyzed collagen, in hair straighteners, 713  
 Cocoyl alcohol, in skin cleansers, 499  
 Cocoyl sarcosine, in skin cleansers, 497  
 Codispensing systems, 347  
 Cod liver oil, in shaving preparations, 505  
 Cohesive mixing, 788  
 Cold creams, 360, 370, 510, 593  
 Cold filling of aerosols, 343  
 Cold sore treatments, 401–403  
 Cold waving processes, 701–705  
 COLIPA, 129, 130, 150, 155, 160, 161  
 Collagen, 18  
   as hydrophilic polymer, 268  
   as hygroscopic agent, 267  
   in ocular tissues and eyes, 82  
   in skin, 3, 15, 18, 22, 34, 387–388  
 Collagenase in skin, 15  
 Collapsible tubes, 881–882  
 Colloid mills, 223, 241, 830–832, 831  
 Colloidal kaolin, in masks 473  
 Colloidal silica  
   in nail white, 595–596  
   in shaving preparations, 514  
 Cologne, 131  
 Color cosmetics 523–572  
   blushers (*See* Blushers and rouge), 560  
   colorants in, 523–524  
   eye makeup (*See* Eye makeup; Mascara; Eyeliner; Eye shadow), 563  
   eyebrow makeup, 566–569  
   eyeliner, 566–569  
   foundation or skin colorants (*See* Foundation makeup), 524–543  
   history of, 523  
   lipsticks (*See* Lipsticks), 543  
   mascara, 564–566, 564  
   regulation of, 523  
 Colorants, use of, 524, 527, 528, 529–531, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539–542, 543–548, 550, 560, 561, 563, 569, 570, 571, 573, 580–582, 838–839  
   in aftershave, 516  
   in blushers, 560  
   botanicals as sources of, 316–319, 316 (*t*)  
   comedogenicity of, 463  
   E.U. regulation of, 151–152  
   in eye makeups, 563  
   in foundation makeups, 523–524, 529–531  
   in hair colorants/dyes, 674, 674 (*t*)  
   in hair setting/styling products, 641

- Colorants, use of (*cont.*)  
*International Color Handbook*, CTFA, 152  
Japan regulation of, 152, 169  
in nail polishes, 580–582  
in skin care products, 362, 382  
in toothpastes, 726, 735  
U.S. regulation and, 135–136
- Colorimetry testing, 775
- Coloring rinses, 131
- Combing damage to hair, **621**
- Comedogenesis in acne, **460**
- Comedogenicity of materials in foundation makeups, 535
- Comedones (*See* Acne etiology)
- Comfrey, 320
- Competition assessment in new product developments, 113
- Compounding rules for new product development, 123–124
- Comprehensive Licensing Standards (CLS), Japanese cosmetic regulation, 166
- Compressed gas propellant for aerosols, 343
- Compression molding, 881
- Computational fluid dynamics (CFD), 791
- Computational HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Computers and optimization of formulas, 125
- Concealer pencils, 567–568
- Conditioners/conditioning agents, 868  
in hair colorants/dyes, 689  
in hair care products, 616–617  
in shampoos, 626–630  
in shaving preparations, 506–507
- Conductance, 774
- Conjunctiva, 79, 81–82, **80**
- Connective tissue in nails, **72**
- Connective tissue in skin, **4**
- Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 146
- Contact dermatitis  
allergic, 758–759  
irritant, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
- Contact lens use and ocular tissues, 84, 86
- Contact urticaria (hives) in, 759–760
- Container size, 170
- Contamination of emulsions, 280
- Contents in labeling, 157
- Continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, **822, 823**
- Continuous oil phase emulsions, 280
- Continuous stirred tank reactor (CSTR), 799, 850
- Cooling of emulsion products, 223, 866–868, 866
- Copolymers  
in foundation makeups, 538  
as rheological additive, 245
- Copper  
effect on collagen synthesis, 18  
in hair, 49
- Coriander oil, 314
- Corn oil, as emulsifier, 221
- Corn removers, 412–413
- Cornea, **80**, 82–84
- Corneal transparency, 84
- Corneal stroma in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Corrosion inhibitors in  
in shaving preparations, 508  
in toothpastes, 734–735
- Cortex of hair, 39, **40**, 41, **44**, 45–48, 50–51, 68
- Corynebacterium* spp., bacteria associated with perspiration odor, 439
- Cosmeceuticals, 149
- Cosmetic adulteration, 132–133
- Cosmetic advertising practices, 146
- Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR) program, 134
- Cosmetic manufacturing, 787–874
- Cosmetic skin care products, 117, 131, 165, 357–361, 374, 376
- Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 129, 145, 297, 298, 303
- Cosmetic type mouthwashes, 745
- Cosmetics Directive in E.U. regulation of, 147–149
- Cosolvents, in hair setting/styling products, 638
- Cost of products in new product developments, 115
- Cotton seed oil, 309  
comedogenicity of, 463  
as emulsifier, 221
- Country of origin in labeling, 140, 159
- Couplers in hair colorants/dyes, 684, **684**
- Covalent cross-link bonds in hair, 47, 47 (*t*), 61–62
- Cream, filling, 841–843
- Cream gel for hair relaxer, 650
- Cream rinses, 61, 201
- Cream-powder (anhydrous) foundations, 541–543
- Creaming of emulsions, 218, 225
- Creams, 117, 131, 165, 358–361
- Creaseproof eyeshadow stick, 571
- Creatine, as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Crimping of valve to container in aerosols, 338, 339 (*t*)
- Crinkling of skin, 378
- Critical micelle concentration (CMC)  
preservatives vs., 292  
in shampoos, 603, 612–613  
in surfactants, 189–190, **190**
- Crocetin, 316, 318
- Crocin, 318
- Crocus, 316, 318
- Cross-linking in permanent waves, 699
- Crotonates, in hair setting/styling products, 660
- Crown of tooth, 89, **89**
- CTFA *Color Handbook* and Japanese regulations, 169
- Cucumber juice, 306, 310
- Cumulative irritancy test, 771
- Curcumin, 316, 318
- Curl patterns in hair, 48, 636
- Curling mascaras, 566
- Curvature of hair, 50

- Cutaneous malignant melanoma, 33
- Cutaneous reaction patterns to cosmetics, 756 (*t*)
- Cuticle of hair, 39, **40**, **44**, 45–46, **45**, 50–51, 55, 60, 61, 620
- Cuticle of nails, 71, 72, 73, 589
- Cuticle massage cream, 593
- Cuticle remover, 589–591
- Cuticle softener, 131, 591
- Cyanide, in hair, 63
- Cyanidin, as antioxidant, 255
- Cyclic growth activity of hair, 41–42, **42**
- Cyclomethicone, 385
  - in after-shave products, 516
  - as emulsifier, 221
  - in eyeshadows, 571
  - in foundation makeups, 534, 535, 536, 537
  - in hair setting/styling products, 644, 659, 665
- Cyclopentasiloxane, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455
- Cyclotetrasiloxane, 453, 454, 455
- Cypress oil, 314
- Cysteic acid, 68
- Cysteine, in hair, 45–49, 61–64, 66, 68, 397
- Cysteine cold wave lotion, 706
- Cysteine HCl, 706
- Cysteine hydrochloride as antioxidant, 256
- Cytokeratins in skin, 7, 357
- Cytokines
  - absorption of UV, 29
  - in skin, 3, 10, 14–15, 357
- Damage to skin, 19–20
- Dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)
- DEA lauryl sulfate, in skin cleansers, 497
- Deagglomeration, 828
- Deamination vs. preservatives, 275
- Decadiene cross-polymers, in hair setting/styling products, 647
- Decarboxylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Definition of cosmetics vs. drugs
  - E.U. regulation of, 148–149
  - Japanese regulation of, 163–165
  - U.S. regulation and, 130–131, 140–142, 393–394
- Defining the product during new product development, 121–122
- Deformation of hair, 51, 53
- Dehydration vs. preservatives, 275
- Dehydration zone in hair, **40**, 41
- Dehydroacetic acid
  - in foundation makeups, 536
  - as preservative, 286, 287, 295, 301
- Dehydrocholesterol (pro-vitamin D3), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Dehydrogenated tallow, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Delipidization by skin care products, 353–354
- Demineralization (by toothpastes), 742
- Dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells in skin, 4
- Dental pellicle of tooth, 91, 92–93
- Dental rinses, 131
- Dentifrices (*See* Toothpaste and dentifrices)
- Dentin of tooth in, 89–91, **89**, 101–102
- Dentinal tubules of tooth, 90–91, 102
- Denture cleansers, 743–745
- Deodorants (*See* Antiperspirants and deodorants)
- Deoxynojirimycin, 397
- Dephosphorylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Depilatories, 131, 164, 695, 711–721
  - chemical depilatories, 715–720
  - cream depilatory, 719
  - efficacy of, 721
  - electrolysis, 715
  - enzymes in, 720
  - epilation, 713
  - facial depilatories for African-American men, 720
  - hydroxides as, 721
  - keratinase in, 720
  - mercaptans as, 717–718, 721
  - mercaptopropionic acid, 720
  - powder depilatory, 720
  - regulation of, 134–135
  - semi-fluid depilatory, 719
  - stannites as, 717
  - sulfides as, 716–717
  - thiglycolates as, 718, 720
  - thioglycerol as, 720
  - thiolactic acid as, 720
  - wax epilation, 713–714
- Dermal fibrils, 5
- Dermal papilla of hair, **40**, **40**
- Dermal sheath of hair, **40**
- Dermal-epidermal interactions in skin, 387–388
- Dermapan sulfate, 18
- Dermatitis
  - allergic contact dermatitis, 758–759
  - contact urticaria (hives), 759–770
  - irritant contact dermatitis, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
  - in nails, 74, 75
  - photoallergic, 760–761
  - phototoxic, 760–761
- Dermatologic assessment questionnaires in, 780–781
- Dermis, 3, **4**, 17–19, 351, 387
  - hair follicle and, 39, **41**
- Dermo-epidermal junction, 4–5
- Descemet's membrane, 83
- Desensitizing agents in toothpastes, 736
- Desferrioximine, 249
- Desmosine, 18
- Desmosomes, 5
- Desquamating layer of skin, 10
- Detackifiers in hair setting/styling products, 639
- Detergents, 131, 730–731
- Dewaxed dammar gum nail polish, 577
- Dextran, as hydrophilic polymer, 268



- Diagnosis of illness using nails, 71, 76–77
- Diammonium dithiodiglycolate, 705, 706
- Diamond dust, in nail polishes, 582
- Diazolidinyl urea  
in eyeliners, 569  
in foundation makeups, 533, 534  
in hair setting/styling products, 643–645, 646, 649, 664, 665
- Dibasic sodium phosphate, 706
- Dibenzylidene sorbitol, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
- Dibutyl phthalate, in nail polishes, 579
- Dicalcium phosphate anhydrous toothpaste, 729
- Dicalcium phosphate dihydrate toothpaste, 729, 737
- Dicapryl maleate, in eyeshadows, 571
- Dicarboxylic acids, 386
- Dichlorobenzyl alcohol, 286, 287
- Dielectric water content (DEWC) of skin, 763
- Diet and acne, 461
- Diethanolamides, 604
- Diethanolamine (DEA), 134, 138, 151  
in shampoos, 607
- Diethyl phthalate, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Diethylene glycol laurate, as emulsifier, 219
- Diethylene glycol stearate, as emulsifier, 219
- Dihydrogenated tallow shampoo, 627
- Dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) in skin, 11
- Diisopropyl adipate  
in acne products, 468  
in foundation makeups, 535  
in hair setting/styling products, 649, 650, 665
- Diisopropyl sebacate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453
- Dilatancy in rheology, 237, 237
- Dimer esters, in lipsticks, 548
- Dimethicone, 385  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 456  
as emulsifier, 221  
in eyeshadows, 570  
in foundation makeups, 536, 540, 541  
in hair setting/styling products, 640, 644, 650, 659, 660, 661, 664, 665  
in moisturizers, 265  
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
in shampoos, 619, 626–629  
in shaving preparations, 509  
removal by shampoo, 619
- Dimethicone copolyol  
in acne products, 465  
in after-shave products, 517  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453, 454, 455  
in dandruff products, 410  
in foundation makeups, 534, 535  
in hair setting/styling products, 655  
in skin cleansers, 497
- Dimethoxane, as preservative, 286, 287
- Dimethoxy-3, 5-pyridinediamine, in permanent hair color, 684
- Dimethyldiallylammonium chloride, in shampoos, 622
- Dimethyl ether (DME)  
in hair setting/styling products, 655, 660, 661  
propellant for aerosols, 341
- Dimethyl phthalate hair setting/styling products, 640
- Dimethylamine, 201
- Dimethylaminoethylmethacrylate, 647
- Dimethylpabamidopropyl laurdiminium tosylate, 649
- Dimethylstearamine, 661
- Dimonium chloride, 201
- Dinitrofluorobenzene, test for immunosuppression, 32
- Diocetyl adipate, 452
- Diocetyl sebacate, 661
- Diosmin as antioxidant, 255
- Dioxane, 134
- Dioxybenzone in sunscreens, 417, 420–421
- Diphtheroids, as contaminants, 283
- Dipropylene glycol, 385  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453, 455  
in shaving preparations, 503  
in skin care, 375, 377, 383
- Directional frictional effect in hair, 45, 59–60
- Discoloration of nails, 77
- Discontinuous phase of oil in emulsions, 212, 218
- Diseases of skin, 17, 35
- Disodium cocamido MIPA sulfosuccinate, 496
- Disodium cocoamphodiacetate, 465
- Disodium EDTA  
in foundation makeups, 534  
in hair setting/styling products, 649  
in skin cleansers, 498
- Disodium laureth sulfosuccinate, in acne products, 464  
in skin cleansers, 496
- Disodium phosphate, 749  
in hair straighteners, 713  
in mouthwashes, 749  
in shampoos, 629
- Disodium pyrophosphate, in toothpastes, 736
- Disorders of hair, 43–44
- Disperse phase of oil in emulsions, 212–214, 218
- Dispersers in rheological additives, 241
- Dispersion equipment, 819–822, 820
- Dispersion fills, 841–843
- Dissociation and effectiveness of preservatives, 289–290
- Distributive mixing, 788
- Disulfide bond of hair, 40, 41, 62–67  
permanent waves and, 696–698
- Dithiane in hair, 66
- Dithioethers permanent waves, 699

- Dithiol, in hair, 63
- Dithionite, in hair, 63
- Dithiothreitol as antioxidant, 256
- DLVO electrical double layer concept in emulsions, 218
- DMAPA hair setting/styling products, 655, 665
- DMDH hydantoin mascaras, 566
- DMDM hydantoin  
in dandruff products, 410  
as preservative, 286, 287  
in shampoos, 624
- DMDMH hair setting/styling products, 650
- DNA, absorption spectrum for UV, 28, 31, 33
- Dog rose seed oil, 309
- Dorsal nail plate in nails, 72
- Douches, 131
- Draize test, 768
- Drier for nail polish, 586, 597–598
- Droplet or globule formation in emulsions, 212, 218
- Drug permeation action enhanced by surfactants, 208
- Dry continuous processing, 870–873
- Dry extracts of botanicals, 307
- Dry eye conditions in ocular tissues and eyes, 85
- Dry mixing systems, 852–865
- Dry mouth (xerostomia), 105–106
- Dry nail polish, 596–597
- Dry shaving preparations, 511–513
- Dry skin, 263–264, 270
- Dry spray dispensers, 346–347
- Drying time of nail polishes, 574, 577, 578, 597–598
- DTPA, 706
- Dusting powders, 131
- Dye removers, 164
- Dye uptake by hair, 48
- Dyes (*See* Colorants; Hair coloring/dyes)
- Eccrine sweat glands, 11–12, 18, 438–439
- EDTA  
as antioxidant, 249  
in hair colorants/dyes, 688  
in hair setting/styling products, 642  
in permanent hair colors, 689  
in shampoos, 624  
in shaving preparations, 508
- Eicosanoids, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Elastic properties in rheological additives, 238
- Elasticity of (Young's modulus) hair, 53
- Elasticity testing of skin, 774
- Elastin in skin, 15, 18, 34
- Elder, 316
- Electric shavers, preelectric shave lotions and, 511–513
- Electrical charge in emulsions, 217–218
- Electrical double layer formation in emulsions, 216
- Electrolysis, 715
- Electropositive charge mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Electrostatic charge generation in hair, 60–61
- Ellagic acid, 397
- Emollients, 379–382, 379  
in foundation makeups, 526, 535  
in masks, 477  
in shaving preparations, 503, 505
- Empirical approach to compounding of new product developments, 123–124
- Emulsification, emulsions, 117, 118, 211–233, 280 (*See also* Manufacture of cosmetics)  
acne products using, 463  
addition of emulsifier, 214  
agitation in, 214–215, 222–223  
alcohol in, 216, 220, 229  
alkyl sulfates in, 227  
alkylacrylate cross-polymers in, 222  
aluminum silicates in, 225  
amphiphile content in, 214  
amphoteric surfactants in, 217 (t), 232  
anionic surfactants in, 216, 217 (t)  
antioxidants in, 231  
auxiliaries in, 212, 216, 220, 221, 222, 225–226  
barrier function of skin vs., 232  
bath oils as, 222  
bentonite in, 225  
botanicals as sources of, 311  
Brownian movement of droplets in, 225–227  
calorimetric HLB values in, 221  
cationic surfactants in, 216, 217 (t), 218  
cetearyl alcohol in, 227, 228, 229  
cetyl hydroxyethyl cellulose in, 222  
cetyldimethicone copolyol at water/oil interface, 229  
chemical nature of, 216–218  
clays in, 225  
clear emulsions, 212, 230, 232  
coalescence of droplets in, 218  
colloid mills in, 223  
computational HLB values in, 221  
contamination of, 280  
continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, 822, 823  
continuous oil phase, 280  
cooling of emulsion products, 223, 866–868  
cosmetic emulsifiers, list of, 219 (t)  
creamlike emulsions, 227  
creaming in, 218, 225  
deagglomeration in, 828  
delivery of active agents through skin using, 232  
discontinuous phase of oil in, 212, 218  
dispersability in water of, 219 (t)  
disperse phase of oil in, 212, 218

- Emulsification, emulsions (*cont.*)  
dispersion creation in,  
213–214  
dispersion equipment,  
819–822, **820**  
DLVO electrical double layer  
concept in, 218  
droplet or globule formation  
in, 212, 218  
electrical charge in, 217–218  
electrical double layer  
formation in, 216  
ethoxylated ethers in, 232  
ethoxylated emulsifiers in,  
218, 219–220  
external or continuous phase  
in, 212, 218  
fatty acids in, 228, 280  
flocculated emulsions, 218,  
828  
foaming during preparation  
of, 216  
formation of emulsions,  
213–222  
foundation makeup, 531–532  
gel type thickeners for, 222  
Gibbs adsorption equation in,  
216  
glycerin in, 227, 280  
glyceryl oleate in, 229  
glyceryl stearate in, 228  
hair conditioners, 868  
heat-sensitive components in,  
223  
high-shear mixers, 819–822,  
**820**  
HLB, use of, 218–221 (*t*),  
225  
homogenization of, 215, 216,  
223, 802–805, **802, 804**  
hydrophile/lipophile balance  
(HLB) in, 218–220,  
221 (*t*), 224  
hydrophilic polymers in, 222  
in shaving preparations, 506  
interfacial film development  
in, 216–217  
interfacial tension and, 216  
interlamellarly fixed water in,  
228  
internal phase of oil in, 212,  
218, 228, 231  
ionic surfactants in, 216,  
217 (*t*)  
ionized emulsifiers, 218  
Kahlweit fish phase diagram  
for, 213, **214**, 224, 230  
lamellar gel phase in, 216,  
228  
lamellar liquid crystalline  
phase in, 216  
lanolin in, 229  
lipids in, 211, 212, 220, 222,  
225, 280  
lipids in, HLB required of,  
221 (*t*)  
liposome production,  
825–826  
liquid crystalline phase in, 217  
liquid-in-liquid dispersion  
system for, 230  
lyotropic hexagonal phase in,  
216  
macroemulsions, 212,  
222–224, 230, 232  
masks, 475 (*t*), 477  
micelles in, 213, 224, 230  
microemulsions, 212–213,  
222, 224, 232, 229–231,  
383  
mineral oil in, 227  
mouthwashes, 747  
multiphase oil-in-water (O/W)  
emulsions, 223, 226–228,  
**227**  
multiple emulsions and, 213,  
382, 384, 385, 382  
nonionic emulsions, 220  
nonionic surfactants in,  
217 (*t*), 217–218, 227  
oil in, 214, 223  
oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions,  
212, 214, 216, 219, 220,  
222–226, 280, 361, 370,  
371, 376, 380, 428–429,  
453, 505, 531–535, 565  
oil-in-water-in-oil (O/W/O)  
emulsions, 213, 382, 384  
oil-water ratio and  
effectiveness of  
preservatives, 290–291  
opaque emulsifiers and, 211,  
212  
organic polymers in, 225  
orientation phase, 814–815  
Ostwald ripening of particles  
in, 230  
oxidative degradation of, 231  
particle sizes in, 213, 213 (*t*),  
214  
PEG-20 glyceryl stearate in,  
227, 228  
petrolatum in, 227  
pH levels of, 280  
phase inversion temperature  
(PIT) in, 224–225, 228,  
231  
phenol index HLB values in,  
221  
physical nature of, 216–218  
polarized light microscopic  
examination of, 217  
polyglyceryl-3 distearate in,  
229  
polymers in, 222, 225, 226  
polyoxyethylene derivatives  
in, 232  
polyoxyethylene esters in, 220  
polyoxyethylene ethers in, 220  
polysorbates in, 232  
preservatives and, 290–291  
preservatives in, 231  
processing equipment for,  
816–819, **816–820**  
relationship of PIT to HLB  
values in, 221  
rheological additive, 240  
rheometry to detect presence  
of, 217  
rising or creaming in, 218,  
225  
safety of, 223, 231–232  
shampoo, 602  
shaving preparations, 510  
silicones as antifoamers,  
216  
skin care products, 358, 359  
soap as, 218, 227  
sodium lauryl sulfate, 228  
solids in, 225  
solubility parameter HLB  
values in, 221  
solubility vs. partition  
coefficient in, 220  
solvents in, 211, 218–219  
stability of, 211, 212, 215,  
217, 218, 220, 222, 223,  
224, 229–231, 891–896

- stabilizers for, 215, 225–226, 226 (*t*)  
 stearyl alcohol in, 220  
 Stokes' law and mobility of droplets in, 225  
 submicron emulsions, 212  
 sunscreens, 428–430  
 surfactants in, 192, 213, 216, 217 (*t*), 218, 223, 232, 814–815  
 suspension of solids, 829–830  
 temperature effect on, 213, 223, 224, 230–231, 815–816  
 thermodynamic instability in (*See* Stability of)  
 thickeners for, 222, 225–226, 229  
 transparent emulsions, 212, 230  
 triglycerides in, 280  
 ultrafine emulsions, 230  
 ultrasonifiers in, 223  
 van der Waals interactions in, 217  
 vegetable oils in, 211  
 viscosity of, 222, 225, 228, 229, 231  
 water in, 211, 212, 214, 220, 223, 227, 228  
 water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions, 212, 216, 220, 222, 228–229, 229, 280, 361, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380, 428–429, 531, 535–538, 565  
 water-in-oil-in-water (W/O/W) emulsions, 213, 382, 384, 382  
 water-in-silicone emulsion, 453, 535–536, 824–825  
 zwitterionic betaine, 311  
 Emulsification formation in shampoos, 613–614  
 Emulsion processing equipment, 782–783  
 Enamel of tooth, 89, 89, 90–91, 95, 97  
 Endocuticle of hair, 44, 45, 50  
 Endothelial adhesion molecules, 29  
 Endothelium in ocular tissues, 83  
 Energy constant (Planck's constant), 24  
 Enforcement of U.S. cosmetic regulations, 130  
 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and, 147  
 Ensulizole sunscreens, 417, 422  
 Environment as source of contaminations, 277–278  
 Environmental factors in acne, 460  
 Environmental factors in moisture content of skin, 268–269, 363–364, 364, 365  
 Enzymatic homeostatis theory in skin care, 386  
 Enzymes  
   as antioxidants, 256  
   in depilatories, 720  
   in saliva, 91  
   in skin, 15, 386  
   in toothpastes, 737  
 Eosin, in lipsticks, 545, 547, 548  
 EP spray system, 346  
 Epicatechin and related materials, 255  
 Epicatechin gallate, 255  
 Epicuticle of hair, 44, 46  
 Epidermal rete ridges in skin, 4  
 Epidermis, 3, 4–7, 4, 351, 352, 387  
   hair follicle in, 39, 41  
   lipids in, 7 (*t*)  
   nails and, 72, 73  
 Epigallocatechin, 255  
 Epigallocatechin gallate, 255  
 Epithelium of nailbed in nails, 73  
 Epithelium of ocular tissues and eyes, 81, 82  
 Ergocalciferol, 368  
 Erythema, 23, 25, 25, 26, 28–29  
 Erythromycin in acne products, 467  
 Essential fatty acids (EFA), 368  
 Esteramides  
   in shampoos, 606  
   in surfactants, 204  
 Esterification in skin, 353  
 Esters  
   as contamination source, 277  
   in lipsticks, 548–549  
   microbial growth in, 281  
   in nail polishes, 578  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
   in surfactants, 204–206  
 Estrogen and hair, 42  
 Estrogenic hormones, regulation of, 135  
 ET-1 receptors and tanning, 398  
 Ethanol, in shampoos, 623  
 Ethanalamine, in hair straighteners, 713  
 Ether sulfates, 689  
 Ethers in surfactants, 206–207  
 Ethoxydiglycol, in semipermanent hair colors, 682  
 Ethoxylated ethers, 232  
 Ethoxylated emulsifiers, 218  
 Ethoxylated fatty alcohol, in shaving preparations, 510  
 Ethoxylated hydrogenated castor oil, in shampoos, 622  
 Ethoxylated lanolin, in nail strengtheners, 595  
 Ethoxylated lipids, in hair setting/styling products, 639  
 Ethoxylated materials in surfactants, 202, 206–207  
 Ethyl acetate in nail polishes, 579  
 Ethyl alcohol  
   in acne products, 466, 468  
   in nail polishes, 579  
   in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
   as preservative, 294  
 Ethyl ester, in hair setting/styling products, 659  
 Ethyl lactate, in nail polishes, 579  
 Ethylene glycol distearate, emulsifier, 219  
 Ethylene glycol, in shampoos, 623  
 Ethylene oxide  
   in shampoos, 607, 608  
   in surfactants, 201  
 Ethylhexyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579  
 Ethylmaleimide, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662

- Ethylparaben, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Eucalyptol, 314  
in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
toothpaste, 737
- Eumelanin, 11
- European Cosmetic Toiletry and Perfumery Association, 130
- European Patent Convention (EPC), 177, 179–180
- European Pharmacopoeia (EP), 297, 298
- European Union (E.U.) cosmetic regulation, 147–162  
animal testing status in labeling, 159, 161–162  
Annexes of Cosmetic Directives, 149, 153–155  
Articles of Cosmetics Directives, 149  
banned substances, 150, 151  
batch numbers in labeling, 157–158  
COLIPA, 150, 155, 160, 161  
color additives, 151–152  
contents in labeling, 157  
cosmeceuticals, 149  
Cosmetics Directive in, 147–148, 149  
country of origin in labeling, 159  
definition of cosmetics vs. drugs, 148–149  
efficacy, 150, 161  
excluded substances, 151, 152  
expiry date in labeling, 157  
formulation in labeling, 160  
foundation makeup, 523  
function of products in labeling, 158  
Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP), 160  
ingredient listing, 158  
ingredients, 150  
instructions in labeling, 157  
*International Color Handbook*, CTFA, 152  
International Nomenclature of Cosmetic Ingredients, 158, 159  
labeling, 156–159  
language of labeling, 159  
lipstick colorants, 544  
manufacturers' name and address in labeling, 157  
method of manufacture in labeling, 160  
new substances, 154–155  
Packaging Waste Directive in, 162  
poison center notification in labeling, 161  
preservatives, 151, 152, 295, 296, 299, 303  
product efficacy, 150, 161  
product information package (PIP), 159–161  
quality, 150  
raw materials in labeling, 160  
registration of manufacturers, 161  
restricted substances, 151  
safety assessment of finished products, 155–156  
safety in, 150, 155–156, 161, 765–766  
sale of cosmetics in E.U., 147–148  
sale of medicinal products in E.U., 148–149  
Scientific Committee for Cosmetic and Non Food products (SCCNFP), 151, 153–155, 156  
sun protection factor (SPF), 153  
sunscreens, 155  
toxic substances, 154  
U.S. regulation and, 129  
ultraviolet (UV) filters, 151, 153  
warnings in labeling, 157
- European-American Phytomedicines Coalition (EAPC), 145
- Evaporation rates of solvents in nail polishes, 579, 579 (*t*)
- Evaporimetry testing, 775
- Evening primrose seed oil, 309, 329
- Excluded substances, in E.U. cosmetic regulation, 151, 152
- Exocuticle of hair, 45, 44, 61
- Expiration dating in labeling, 140, 157
- External or continuous phase of oil in emulsions, 212, 218
- Extracts of botanicals, 306–308
- Extrudable gel type antiperspirants and deodorants, 454–455
- Extrusion blow molding, 880
- Eye creams, 378
- Eye infection, 284
- Eye irritancy testing in, 768–769, 771
- Eye makeup, 563
- Eye shadow, 131, 569–571  
creaseproof stick, 571  
powder, 853
- Eyebrow makeup, 566–569
- Eyebrow pencils, 567–568
- Eyelids, 79–81
- Eyeliner, 131, 166, 566–569
- Eyes (*See* Ocular tissues and eyes)
- F-Z finger pump foamer system, 347
- Face cream, 131
- Face lotion, 131
- Face masks, 131, 1
- Facial hair, 41, 42, 43
- Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (FPLA), 132
- Fas/FasL system, UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Fat content of nails, 73
- Fats, as contamination source, 277
- Fatty acids, 311, 460, 461, 604, 689  
comedogenicity of, 463  
in emulsions, 228, 280  
in foundation makeups, 533, 538  
in hair setting/styling products, 641  
in hair, 46  
as lipids, 324, 329–330  
in lipsticks, 548  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
microbial growth in, 281  
as rheological additive, 235  
in shampoos, 606, 622

- in shaving preparations, 502–503, 505, 506, 510  
 in skin care products, 324, 329–330, 368–369  
 in skin, 16, 353  
 in soaps, 401, 486  
 in surfactants, 197, 198, 203  
 Fatty alcohol sulfates, 689  
 Fatty alcohols  
   in foundation makeups, 533  
   in lipsticks, 548  
 Fatty alkanolamides, in  
   shampoos, 606–607, 622  
 Fatty alkyl shampoo, 608  
 Fatty amido alkyl shampoo, 608  
 Fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates in  
   shampoos, 606  
 FD&C Blue 1, 135  
 FD&C Green 5, 135  
 FD&C Red 40, 135  
 FD&C Yellow 5, 135  
 FDA Modernization Act of  
   1997, 133  
 Federal Trade Commission  
   (FTC), 146  
 Federal Trade Commission Act  
   (FTCA), 146  
 Feminine hygiene products, 120,  
   131  
 Fennel oil, 314  
 Fenton reaction, 250, 251  
 Ferric ferrocyanide (ultramarine  
   blue), 546  
 Ferulic acid, 256, 312  
 Fever blister treatments,  
   401–403  
 Fibroblast growth factor, 15  
 Fibroblasts in skin, 17, 387, 388  
 Fibronectin in skin, 34  
 Filaggrin, 8  
 Filling processes, 836–846  
   aerosols, 343  
   creams, 841–843  
   dispersions, 841–843  
   Godet products, 843–844  
   high-viscosity products,  
     839–840  
   hot products, 841–843  
   lipsticks and lip balms,  
     844–845  
   loose powders, 861  
   low-viscosity products,  
     837–838  
   packaging lines for, 841, **842**  
   pressed powder, 861–863  
   shear-sensitive products,  
     840–841  
   suppositories, 844–845  
   warm products, 841–843  
 Filling temperature, 841  
 Film-formers in nail polishes,  
   575–576  
 Filtration, 788  
 Finger- vs. toenail growth rates,  
   72, 74  
 Five-minute men's colorants,  
   688  
 Fixative residue removal by  
   shampoo, 619  
 Flakeproof mascara, 565  
 "Flaming" of lipsticks, 558  
 Flavins/flavonoids  
   as antioxidants, 250, 253, 257,  
     312  
   botanicals as sources of, 317  
 Flavorings  
   botanicals as sources of,  
     313–315, 313  
   mouthwashes, 745–747, 746  
   toothpaste, 726  
 Flesh-eating bacteria and  
   preservatives, 285  
 Flexibility in new product  
   developments, 113–114  
 Flexible packaging, 882–883  
 Flexography printing for  
   packaging, 884  
 Flocculated emulsions, 218,  
   828  
 Flossing in oral care, 96  
 Flow patterns and agitation, 802,  
   **803**, 810–811  
 Flow properties (*See*  
   Rheological additives)  
 Fluid flow, 788  
 Fluoride, 94, 96–100, 142, 151,  
   729, 735–736, 745, 749  
 Flyaway effect (static) in hair,  
   60–61  
 Foam formation in surfactants,  
   194–195  
 Foaming (lather) characteristics  
   mouthwashes, 745  
   shampoo, 601, 603, 609,  
     613–614, 630–631  
   shave products, 502–504  
 Foaming products, 194–195,  
   120  
 Follicle, **4,13–14**, 18, **39–41**,  
   352, 438  
 Food and Drug Administration  
   (FDA), 130–133, 133–138,  
   398–401  
 Food Drug and Cosmetic Act  
   (FDCA), 130, 133  
 Foot powder, 120, 131  
 Formaldehyde  
   in foundation makeups, 535,  
     536  
   in nail strengtheners, 594–595  
   in permanent waves, 699  
   as preservative, 289, 290, 301  
   in shampoos, 624  
 Formalin, 286, 287  
 Formulation in labeling, 160  
 Foundation makeup, 131, 360,  
   524–543  
   alkaline earths in, 524  
   amines in, 534  
   anhydrous formulations of,  
     526, 530, 541–543  
   application methods for,  
     526–527  
   binders in, 538, 539  
   bismuth oxychloride in, 524  
   blending of, 539  
   boron nitride in, 524  
   chemical reaction of pigments  
     in, 530  
   colored pigments in, 529–531  
   comedogenicity of ingredients  
     in, 535  
   coverage by, 524–526  
   cream-powder (anhydrous)  
     foundations, 541–543  
   emollients in, 526, 535  
   emulsified liquid or cream,  
     531–532  
   fillers in, 527  
   finish obtained from, 524, 526  
   form of, 524  
   formulations for, 531–543  
   fragrance in, 528, 531  
   humectants for, 535  
   iron oxide pigments in, 529  
   kaolin in, 524, 526

- Foundation makeup (*cont.*)
- light feeling, natural coverage formula, 534
  - liquid-powder (anhydrous) foundations, 541–543
  - loose powder foundations, 541
  - mechanical blended pigments in, 530
  - mechanical/heat blended pigments in, 530
  - medium-coverage formula, 533
  - mica in, 525, 528
  - oil-based, 526, 530, 532–535
  - oil-in-water emulsion, 531, 532–535
  - oils in, 535
  - pearlaceous materials in, 524, 526
  - pigments in, 527, 530
  - powder foundations, 538–541
  - precipitation of pigments in, 530
  - preservatives in, 535, 536
  - pressed powder foundations, 538–541, 861–863
  - reflectivity of materials in, 524–525
  - sericite in, 528
  - soaps in, 524
  - specialty fillers in, 528–529
  - stabilizers for, 535, 536
  - stick foundations, 543
  - surface treated pigments in, 529–530
  - talc in, 524–525, 527–528, 531
  - titanium dioxide in, 525, 529, 531, 532
  - titanium oxide in, 524
  - ultramarine blue pigments in, 529
  - viscosity of, 538
  - water-based, 526, 530, 535–538
  - water-in-oil emulsion, 531, 535–538
  - water-in-silicone emulsion, 535–536
  - waxes in, 530, 538, 542, 543
  - wear characteristics of, 527
  - wetting agents in, 535
  - zinc oxide in, 524, 525–526
- Fragrance, 131, 166, 378, 385
- in after-shave products, 515
  - botanicals as sources of, 313–315
  - in dandruff products, 410
  - in foundation makeups, 528, 531
  - in hair setting/styling products, 641
  - in permanent waves, 705, 707
  - in nail polishes, 582
  - in shampoos, 624
  - in shaving preparations, 507
  - in skin care products, 362, 371–383
  - water-soluble botanical fragrances, 315
- Freckles, 33, 34
- Free fatty acid (FFA)
- in shampoos, 615
  - in shaving preparations, 503
  - in skin, 6, 13
- Free radical formation, 35, 248–249
- Friction of hair, 50, 59–60
- Frostbite, 20
- Fructose, in skin cleansers, 497
- Fuller's earth, in masks, 473
- Function of products in labeling, 158
- Functionality of products, 114
- Fungal growth, 274–276, 284
- Fungal infections of nails, 75, 76–77
- Fusobacterium nucleatum* as cause of gingivitis in oral care, 100
- GAG (*See* Glycosaminoglycans)
- Galactoarabinan, 311
- Gallic acid as antioxidant, 256, 312
- Gardenia, 316, 317
- Gelatin
- in emulsions, 226
  - in masks, 481
- Gelatin capsules, 120
- Gelatin use and nails, 75
- Gellan gum toothpaste, 733
- Gelling agents in toothpastes, 726
- Gels, 119
- after-shave gels, 517
  - “blooming” gels, 509–510
  - hair gels, 868
  - hair setting/styling products, 646–650
  - pomade, 665
  - post-foaming shave gels, 509–510
  - preelectric shave gel stick, 514
  - ringing gels, 430, 651
  - sunscreens, 430
  - thickeners for emulsions, 222
- Genetic disorders of hair, 43
- Genistein as antioxidant, 255
- Geranium oil, 314
- German chamomile, 320
- Gibbs adsorption equation, 187–189, 191, 193, 216
- Ginger oil, 314
- Gingival crevicular fluid, 92
- Gingival margin of tooth, 89
- Gingivitis, 99–101, 736
- Glass packaging, 883–884
- Glazes, hair, 643–646
- Globalization of industry and U.S. cosmetic regulations, 129
- Glucamine, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glucosamine, 397
- as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Glucosamine hydrochloride, in hair setting/styling products, 642
- Glucose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glucoside surfactants, 207
- Glucuronic acid, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glutamate, as preservative, 291
- Glutamic acid
- in hair, 48
  - as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Glutaraldehyde, 286, 287
- Glutathione, 256, 397
- Glycereth 7, 654
- Glycereth 26, 650
- Glycerides, 460, 461
- as lipid, 324
  - in surfactants, 204–205

- Glycerin, 310, 378, 385  
 in after-shave products, 516, 518  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453  
 in cuticle removers, 589, 591  
 in dental products, 739  
 in emulsions, 227, 280  
 in hair setting/styling products, 640, 643, 645, 646, 649, 664  
 in hair straighteners, 711  
 as humectant, 269, 270, 364, 366  
 as hygroscopic agent, 267  
 in lipsticks, 548  
 in masks, 477, 480, 481  
 microbial growth in, 280  
 in mouthwashes, 747, 750  
 in nail strengtheners, 594  
 in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
 in shampoos, 623  
 in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 506  
 in skin cleansers, 497, 498, 499  
 in skin care, 372, 374, 379, 381, 383, 384  
 in soaps, 487  
 in toothpastes, 731, 737  
 Glyceryl 2-ethylhexanoate, 385  
 Glyceryl esters foundation makeup, 533  
 Glyceryl ether (GE), 328  
 Glyceryl isostearate, 384, 385  
 Glyceryl oleate in emulsions, 229  
 Glyceryl stearate  
 as emulsifier, 219  
 in hair setting/styling products, 649  
 Glyceryl oleate, 376  
 Glyceryl polymethacrylate, in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646  
 Glyceryl stearate, 378  
 in acne products, 466  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453  
 as emulsifier, 219, 228  
 in foundation makeups, 533  
 in hair setting/styling products, 654  
 in shampoos, 623  
 in shaving preparations, 510  
 in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 380, 382, 384, 498  
 in surfactants, 204  
 Glyceryl thioglycolate  
 permanent waves, 701, 705, 706  
 Glyceryl triisostearate, 385  
 Glyceryl triacetyl hydroxy stearate lipstick, 548  
 Glyceryl tribehenate foundation makeup, 541  
 Glyceryl-3 diisostearate, comedogenicity of, 463  
 Glycine  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453  
 in hair, 47  
 Glycocalyx in ocular tissues and eye, 81  
 Glycol, 235, 504, 548  
 Glycol copolymer, in nail polishes, 577  
 Glycol distearate  
 in moisturizers, 265  
 in shaving preparations, 504  
 Glycol stearate, 628  
 in hair straighteners, 711  
 in skin cleansers, 497  
 Glycolcalyx of skin, 5  
 Glycolic acid, in skin care, 379, 468  
 Glycolipids in skin, 353  
 Glycols as rheological additives, 235  
 Glycoproteins, 5, 46  
 Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs)  
 as humectants, 364, 366  
 as hydrophilic polymers, 268  
 in ocular tissues and eyes, 82  
 in skin, 3, 17, 18, 22  
 Glyphic wrinkles, 378  
 Glysine, in skin, 18  
 Goblet cells in ocular tissues, 81, 83  
 Godet product fills, 843–844  
 Good manufacturing practice (GMP)  
 compliance with U.S. regulation and, 137  
 E.U. regulation of, 160  
 preservatives and, 274, 302  
 Gore-Tex, 357  
 Gossypol as antioxidant, 252  
 Gram-negative bacteria, 283  
 Gram-positive bacteria, 283  
 Granular layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 16  
 Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, 15  
 Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), 15  
 Grape seed oil, 309  
 Grapefruit oil, 314  
 “Grocery list” research method  
 in new product development, 112–113  
 Ground substance, 3, 18  
 Growth rate of hair, 39–40, 42  
 Growth rate of nails, 73, 74  
 Guanine nail polish, 581  
 Guar gum, 311  
 in after-shave products, 518  
 in emulsions, 226  
 in hair setting/styling products, 644  
 in masks, 477, 481  
 rheological properties of, 244  
 in shaving preparations, 503, 505  
 in toothpastes, 733  
 Guar hydroxypropyltrimonium chloride, 628  
 Guerbet alcohol reaction in surfactants, 203  
 Guinea pig maximization testing, 769  
 Gum arabic, 226, 311  
 Gums, 311  
 as contamination source, 277  
 in masks, 477, 481  
 as rheological additive, 226, 235, 243, 244  
 in shaving preparations, 505, 506, 518  
 in toothpastes, 732, 733  
 H-NMR for obtaining HLB values, 221  
 Haber/Weiss reaction, 251



- Hair, 39–70
- adhesion of, 50
  - alkaline agents and, 63–64
  - alopecia, 43, 44
    - alopecia androgenetica, 44
    - alopecia areata, 44
  - amino acids in, 46–48, 67, 68
  - anagen phase of growth in, 41–42, 42
  - anagen effluvium, 44
  - antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 408–412, 630
  - arrector pili muscle of, 40
  - axillary region hair, 41
  - basement membrane of, 40
  - bending properties of, 50, 56
  - body in, 632
  - bulb, follicular bulb of, 39, 40
  - Bunte Salt in, 64–65
  - C-S scission in, 67, 68
  - catagen phase of growth in, 41–42, 42
  - cell membrane complex (CMC) of, 44, 44, 45, 46, 61
  - cell proliferation and differentiation zone in, 40
  - chemical properties of, 61–69
  - chemically treated hair and shampoos, 621–622
  - citrulline in, 48
  - clay masks for, 471–472
  - clipping of, 42
  - color of, 14
  - combing damage to hair, 621
  - cortex of, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45–48, 50–51, 68
  - covalent cross-links in, 47, 47 (*t*), 61–62
  - curl patterns in, 636
  - curling in, 48
  - curvature of, 50
  - cuticle of, 39, 40, 44, 45–46, 45, 50–51, 55, 60, 61, 620
  - cyclic growth activity of, 41–42, 42
  - cysteic acid in, 68
  - cysteine in, 45–48, 61, 63–64, 66, 68
  - deformation of, 51, 53
  - degradation of inner root sheath (IRS) zone in, 40
  - dehydration zone in, 40, 41
  - dermal papilla of, 40, 40
  - dermal sheath of, 40
  - development of, 39–44
  - directional frictional effect (DFE) in, 45, 59–60
  - disorders of, 43–44
  - disulfide bond in, 40, 41, 62–67
  - dithiane in, 66
  - dye uptake by, 48
  - effect of alkalis on, 63, 64
  - effect of sulfites on, 64, 65
  - effect of mercaptan on, 65, 66
  - effect of oxidants on, 66, 68
  - elasticity of (Young's modulus), 53
  - electrostatics of, 60–61
  - endocuticle of, 45, 44, 50
  - epicuticle of, 44, 46
  - epidermal layer around follicle of, 39, 41
  - exocuticle of, 45, 44, 61
  - facial hair, 41, 42, 43
  - flyaway effect (static) in, 60–61
  - follicle, 4, 13–14, 18, 39, 40, 41, 352, 438
  - frictional properties of, 50, 59–60
  - genetic disorders of, 43
  - glucose and, 40
  - glutamic acid in, 48
  - glycine in, 47
  - glycoproteins in, 46
  - growth effect hormones, 42
  - growth effect nutrition, 43
  - growth rate of, 39–40, 42
  - hair follicle, 4, 39, 40
  - hair waving chemistry, 48, 61–69, 701–705 (*See also* Permanent waving)
  - hardening zone in, 40, 41
  - heavy metal content of, 49
  - helix in, 44
  - High-S proteins in, 44
  - histidine in, 67, 68
  - Hookean deformation in, 51
  - hormonal influence on, 42–43, 48–49
  - hydrogen bonds in, 62
  - hydrophobicity of, 46, 57–58, 58
  - infant and postnatal, 41
  - inner root sheath (IRS) of, 39, 40
  - intermediate filament (IF) in, 41, 44, 47, 50, 51, 52, 61, 62
  - keratin associated proteins (KAPs) in, 41, 48, 61
  - keratin gene expression region in, 40, 40
  - keratin in, 41, 46–47, 50–54, 61–65, 695, 696
  - kwashiorkor, 40, 43, 49
  - lanthionine in, 63–64
  - lanugo or prenatal hair, 41
  - left-handed helix in, 44
  - lipids in, 46–48, 61
  - loss of, 43–44
  - low-S proteins in, 44
  - luster of, 50, 58–59, 631, 632
  - lysine in, 45, 67
  - lysinoalanine in, 64
  - macrofibril in, 44
  - male-pattern alopecia, 44
  - manageability of, 632
  - marasmus, 40, 43
  - matrix of, 44, 50, 51, 52, 55
  - mechanical properties of, 48–57
  - medulla of, 39, 40, 44, 48
  - melanin in, 67, 68, 69
  - melanosomes in, 14
  - mercaptan in, 66
  - metals in, 48–49
  - methionine in, 67, 68
  - moisturizers for, 269–270
  - monilethrix, 43
  - morphology, 44–49, 44
  - negative charge of, 609–610
  - nonkeratinous proteins in, 61
  - nuclear remnant of, 44
  - number of hair follicles and, 41
  - nutritional needs of, 40, 43, 49
  - ortho cell in, 44
  - ortho-paracortical cells in, 44, 48
  - outer root sheath (ORS) of, 39, 40
  - oxidation in, 66–68
  - oxidation zone in, 41
  - oxidizing (bleaching) agents for, 67
  - paracortical cell in, 44, 48

- pH and sorption/desorption characteristics of, 55–56, 66, 609
- phenylalanine in, 68
- physical properties of, 49–57
- pili torti, 43
- pK values and thiol production in, 66
- polarization in, 62
- postpartum alopecia, 43, 44
- prenatal lanugo, 41
- proline in, 68
- protein helices in, 44, 51, 52
- proteins in, 40, 41–48, 44, 55, 61, 62, 68, 69
- protofilaments in, 47–48
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- puberty and, 41, 42–43
- pubic hair, 41, 43
- removal of (depilation), 131, 164, 695, 711–721
- removal of (epilation), 713
- resorption zone in, 40
- right-handed helix in, 44
- S-S scission in, 67, 68
- sebaceous gland and, 13, 40, 48
- sebum on, 614–616
- SH-group in stress relaxation, 55–56
- shape of, 695, 696
- shaving of, 42
- shine of, 58–59
- softening of, for shaving, 501–502
- split ends in, 621
- static charge in, 50, 60–61
- steam, effect on, 62
- stress relaxation in, 55–56
- stress-strain response in, 50–52, 50
- stretching in, 51, 53
- structure of, 39–44, 41
- sulfhydryls reaction with, 49, 46, 51, 53, 63, 66
- sulfites reaction with, 64–65
- sun bleaching of, 68–69
- surface properties of, 57–61
- telogen phase of growth in, 41–42, 42
- telogen effluvium, 44
- tensile properties of, 50–53
- thioesters in, 46, 61, 63–64
- thiols reaction with, 65–66
- thiosulfate in, 64–65
- torsional properties of, 50, 56–57
- trace metal content of, 49
- trichorrhexis nodosa, 43
- tryptophan in, 67, 68
- turnover point in, 51–53
- tyrosine in, 47, 67, 68
- ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 68–69
- vellus, 41
- water, effect on, 62
- water sorption/desorption, 54–55, 54
- water swelling of, 54
- wettability of, 50, 54, 57–58, 58, 68
- yield point of, 51, 53
- Young-Dupre equation and wettability of, 58
- Hair care products (hair setting products), 166
- conditioners, 868
- gels, 868
- rheological additives for, 244
- Hair colorants/dyes, 131, 164, 669–694
- affinity for keratin in, 671–672
- alkalizing agents, 687
- aminoanthraquinones in, 676, 679–680
- auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691
- Bandrowski's base for, 685
- bleaching of hair, 692–694
- characteristics of, 670–672
- colorants used in, 674, 674 (*t*)
- commercial formulation for semipermanent color, 680–682
- commercial product mixtures, 672
- compatibility with other hair treatments and, 671
- concentrations of dyestuffs in, 672–673
- conditioners in, 689
- couplers in, 684, 684
- duration of coloring process, 673, 676, 683
- dyestuffs used in, 676
- five-minute men's colorants, 688
- formation of colors in hair, 685–686, 686
- frequency of applications of, 673
- hair color removers, 692
- harmlessness of, 670–671
- hydrogen peroxide in, 687
- indolic dyes, 691–692, 691
- lightening of hair, 692–694
- men's hair colorants, 688
- metallic hair dyes, 691
- nitroaminophenols in, 676, 678–679, 678
- nitrophenylenediamines in, 676–678, 677
- nonammonia alkalizers in, 688
- oxidative hair coloring, 682–690, 686
- permanent hair coloring, 670, 682–690
- preservatives in, 688–689
- primary intermediate dyestuffs in, 683, 684
- quantity of solution applied, 673
- regulation of, 136
- safety of, 670–671
- selectivity in, 671
- semipermanent hair coloring, 670, 676–682, 688
- stability of, 671
- surfactants in, 689
- systems of, 669–670
- temporary hair coloring, 670, 674–675
- toxicology of, 686–687
- treatment after coloration and, 673
- vegetable hair dyes, 691
- Hair conditioner, 131
- Hair follicle, 4, 13–14, 18, 39–41, 80, 438
- Hair gels, 868
- Hair growers, 164
- Hair moisturizers, 269–270
- Hair relaxers, 118, 650
- Hair rinses, 131, 165
- Hair setting products, 635–667
- additives to, 641
- antistatic agents in, 639
- antifrizz gel, 646

- Hair setting products (*cont.*)  
 blow-dry lotion, 643  
 botanical extracts in, 641  
 brilliantine, 664  
 colorants in, 641, 663, 665  
 cosolvents in, 638  
 cream gel for hair relaxer, 650  
 curl patterns in hair, 636  
 detackifiers in, 639  
 dry-setting products, 656–663  
 effects of, 637  
 extra body mousse, 654  
 fibrous/stringy lotion, 644  
 fragrance in, 641  
 gel pomade, 665  
 gels, 646–650  
 glazes, 643–646  
 hair sprays, 636, 656–663  
 hair tonic, 665  
 high humidity curl retention values, 666  
 high-viscosity gel, 648  
 humectants in, 639  
 liquids, 642–643  
 lotions, 642–643, 645  
 low-viscosity lotion, 645  
 marketing additives to, 641  
 mascara for hair, 665, 663  
 mechanisms of hair styling, 635–637  
 modifiers in, 639–640  
 mousses, 652–653, 654  
 nondrip lotion glaze, 645  
 nonaerosol mousse, 655  
 performance evaluation of, 666–667, **666**  
 plasticizers in, 639  
 polymers in, 637, 638–639  
 pomades, 636, 651–652, 664  
 postfoaming gel/mousse, 653–655, 656  
 pourable sculpting gel, 646  
 preservatives in, 640–641  
 propellants for, 638, 653  
 protection of hair, 636–637  
 proteins in, 641  
 pump spray, 659  
 PVP in, 638, 647  
 resins for, 638–639  
 ringing gels, 651  
 sculpting lotions, 643–646  
 setting lotion, 643  
 shaping spray, 653  
 shine enhancers, 636  
 solubilizers in, 641  
 solvents in, 637–638, 655, 660, 665  
 splash-on, 642–643  
 split end control, 645, 664  
 spray gels, 642–643, 653, 647  
 spritz styling sprays, 653  
 styling creams, 649–651  
 styling gel with UV screen, 649  
 styling sticks, 652  
 tack-free sprayable lotion, 644  
 thermal protection lotion, 645  
 tonics, 636, 665  
 UV absorbers in, 641–649  
 viscosity, 646–650  
 vitamins in, 641  
 volatile organic compounds in, 655  
 wet-set products, 642–643  
 wetting agents in, 639
- Hair spray, 120, 131, 636, 656–663  
 aerosol type, 658–663  
 dispensing methods for, 656–657  
 emulsion formation in, 613–614  
 mesophase formation in, 613–614  
 neutralizers in, 658  
 penetration of, 613–614  
 polymers in, 657, 658  
 propellants for, 658–663  
 pump spray hair spray, 659  
 PVP in, 657, 658  
 stability, 662  
 volatile organic compounds in, 657
- Hair straighteners, 131, 695, 708–711  
 caustic preparations for, 709–710  
 chemical agents, 710–711  
 hot comb method, 709  
 lipids in, 711–712  
 neutralizers, 711  
 no-lye hair straightener, 712  
 regulation of, 134–135  
 relaxers, 710–711  
 self-heating hair straightener, 713
- Hair tonic, 665
- Halogenated salicylates, 134
- Halogens, in hair, 67
- Hamamelis virginiana* (*See* Witch hazel)
- Hammer mill, **854**, 858–859
- Hand and body protectants, 360
- Hand creams, 382
- Hand lotion, 131
- Hand sanitizers, 144
- Haptens of tooth, 85
- Haptens, UV-mediated  
 immunosuppression and, 32
- Hardeners for nails, 75, 587
- Hardening zone in hair, **40**, 41
- Hazardous substances and U.S. cosmetic regulation, 134
- Head space in aerosols, 344
- Healing process and moisture in skin, 265–266
- Heat exchanger, **801**
- Heat-sensitive components in emulsions, 223
- Heat transfer, 788, 792, 796–799, **797**, 800–801, 849–851
- Heat waving processes, 699–701
- Heavy metal content of, 49
- Hectorite, 385  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454  
 in masks, 473  
 in nail polishes, 583  
 rheological properties of, 244, 245  
 in skin care, 371, 381
- HEDTA, 705, 706
- Helix in hair, **44**
- Hemidesmosomes, in ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Hemoglobin, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23, 24
- Henna, 318, 669
- Heparin, in skin, 15
- Herbal extracts in shampoos (botanicals), 601–602
- Herbs, as contamination source, 277
- Hesperidine as antioxidant, 255
- Hexachlorophene, 134  
 in acne products, 467  
 in skin cleansers, 495

- Hexadecanoic acid, 198  
 Hexadecene copolymer, in hair setting/styling products, 652  
 Hexadecyl adipate, in skin care, 376  
 Hexamethylene tetramine, in permanent waves, 699  
 Hexamidine isethionate, 286, 287  
 Hexyl laurate, in foundation makeups, 537  
 Hexylene glycol in shampoos, 623  
 Hexylresorcinol, in O.T.C drugs, 404  
 High flow/low shear homogenizers, 820  
 High humidity curl retention values in hair setting/styling products, 666  
 High-shear mixers, 819–822, **820**, 848–849  
 High-shear/low flow homogenizers, 821  
 High-S proteins in hair, **44**  
 High-viscosity mixture, 810–813, **812**, **813**  
 Hinokitiol, 312, 397  
 Histamines, 15, 29  
 Histidine  
   in hair, 67, 68  
   as hygroscopic agent, 267  
 Histology of nails, 73  
 Hives, contact urticaria, 759–770  
 Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia, defining drugs and, 131  
 Homogenization of emulsions, 215, 223, 241, 802–805, **802**, **804**, 819  
 Homosalate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421  
 Hookean deformation in hair, 51  
 Hopper flow, 871–872, **872**  
 Hormonal influences  
   on acne, 460  
   on hair, 42–43, 48–49  
   on skin, 388  
   regulation of, 135  
 Horny layer (stratum corneum) layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 351  
 Hot comb method of hair straighteners, 709  
 Hot fills, 841–843  
 Hot water bath testing of aerosols, 344  
 Human testing procedures, 769–773  
 Humectants (moisturizers and humectants)  
   in foundation makeups, 535  
   in hair setting/styling products, 639  
   in mouthwashes, 747  
   in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 511, 518  
   in skin moisturizers, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*)  
   in toothpastes, 726, 731–732  
 Hyaluronic acid  
   in hair setting/styling products, 642  
   as humectant, 363, 364  
   as hydrophilic polymer, 268  
   in skin, 18  
 Hydantoin  
   in dandruff products, 410  
   in mascaras, 566  
   as preservative, 286, 287  
   in shampoos, 624  
 Hydrated silica in toothpastes, 728–729, 733, 737  
 Hydration of ocular tissues, 84  
 Hydration of skin, 352  
 Hydrocarbon propellants for aerosols, 121, 339–342  
 Hydrocarbon waxes, in lipsticks, 549  
 Hydrocarbons, 323, 357  
 Hydrochloric acid nail bleach, 592  
 Hydrocolloid facial masks, 472, 481–482  
 Hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) propellants for aerosols, 341–342, 654, 661  
 Hydrogen bonding in surfactants, 202–203  
 Hydrogen bonds in hair, 62  
 Hydrogen peroxide, 706  
   as antioxidant, 250, 252  
   in hair colorants/dyes, 687  
   in hair straighteners, 713  
   in hair, 67  
   in mouthwashes, 749  
   in nail bleach, 592  
   in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
   in permanent waves, 698, 704  
   photosensitivity and, 35  
   in shampoos, 607  
   in toothpastes, 735  
 Hydrogenated castor oil  
   in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452  
   in foundation makeups, 537  
   in hair setting/styling products, 641, 654, 664  
   in skin cleansers, 496  
 Hydrogenated lanolin, 376, 380  
 Hydrogenated palm oil, 375  
 Hydrogenated polybutene, 499  
 Hydrogenated rice bran wax, 265  
 Hydrogenated starch, 267  
 Hydrogenated starch hydrolysate, in toothpastes, 731, 747  
 Hydrogenated vegetable oil comedogenicity of, 463  
   in lipsticks, 550  
   in skin care, 372  
 Hydrolyzed wheat protein, 451  
 Hydrolysis in skin, 353  
 Hydrolysis vs. preservatives, 275  
 Hydrolytic enzymes in skin, 16  
 Hydrolyzed proteins, 451, 497, 598, 622  
 Hydrolyzed keratin  
   in nail strengtheners, 595  
   in shampoos, 622  
 Hydroperoxides in antioxidants, 248, 249  
 Hydrophile/lipophile balance (HLB) in emulsions, 218–220, 221 (*t*), 224, 292  
 Hydrophilic colloids, 311  
 Hydrophilic portion of surfactants, 187, 188, 189  
 Hydrophilic polymers in emulsions, 222  
   in skin moisturizers, 268  
 Hydrophobe/lipophobe interactions, 119  
 Hydrophobic portion of surfactants, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193

- Hydrophobic starch foundation makeup, 538
- Hydrophobicity of hair, 46, 57–58, **58**
- Hydroquinones, 252, 397
- Hydroxy acid, 327  
in permanent waves, 699
- Hydroxyacrylates, in hair setting/styling products, 659, 662
- Hydroxyalkyl, in shaving preparations, 505
- Hydroxyanisole, 252
- Hydroxybenzoic acid, 289, 312
- Hydroxybenzomopholine, in permanent hair colors, 684
- Hydroxyethylcellulose usage, 701  
in cuticle softeners, 591  
in depilatories, 720  
in eyeliners, 569  
in hair setting/styling products, 644–646, 665  
rheological properties of, 244  
in semipermanent hair colors, 682  
in shampoos, 623  
in shaving preparations, 509  
in skin cleansers, 496  
in temporary hair coloring, 675  
in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxyethylmaleimide, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662
- Hydroxyindole, in permanent hair colors, 684
- Hydroxyl radicals, 35, 249–250, 251
- Hydroxylated lanolin, in mascaras, 565, 566
- Hydroxylysine, in skin, 18
- Hydroxyproline, in skin, 18
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl guar  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl cellulose  
in after-shave products, 517  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
rheological properties of, 244
- Hydroxypropyl guar, in toothpastes, 733
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, 628  
in acne products, 468  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
in shampoos, 623
- Hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization, 266, 267 (*t*)
- Hyperkeratotic lesions, 33
- Hypersensitivity of tooth in, 101–102
- Hypoallergenicity in labeling, 140
- Hypochlorites in nail bleach, 592
- Hyponychium in nails, 71, **72**
- Identifying product in labeling, 139
- Illipe butter, 309
- Imadazolidinyl urea  
as preservative, 286, 287  
in shampoos, 624
- Image analysis, in vivo, 777
- Immunosuppression and ultraviolet (UV) radiation, 28, 32
- Impedance (conductance) testing, 774
- Impellers, 804–805, **805, 806**, 811–813, **812, 813**
- Impermeable films and moist/in moisturizers, 264
- In vitro testing  
performance and, 773–776  
safety testing and, 767–768
- In vivo testing, performance, 776–781
- Indigo, 318
- Indolic hair dyes, 691–692, **691**
- Infant and postnatal hair, 41
- Infections of ocular tissues and eyes, 85, 86
- Inflammation of nails, 77
- Infringement of patents, 180–183
- Ingredient listing in labeling, 139, 158, 170
- Ingredient selection in new product developments, 122–123, 122
- Ingredient sourcing in new product developments, 122–123, 122
- Injection blow molding, 881
- Injection molding, 880
- Inner root sheath of hair, 39, **40**
- Innervation of ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81
- Inositol  
in skin cleansers, 497  
in surfactants, 200
- Insecticides, 165
- Insensible perspiration of skin  
(See Transepidermal water loss)
- Insoluble sodium phosphate (IMP) in toothpastes, 730
- Inspections  
OTC drug manufacturers, 143–144, 143  
U.S. regulation and, 133
- Instructions for labeling, 157
- Instrumentation for measurement of rheological additives, 238–239
- Intellectual property, 175–183
- Interfacial film development in emulsions, 216–217
- Interfacial tension and emulsions, 216
- Interlamellarly fixed water in emulsions, 228
- Interleukin and tanning, 15, 29, 398
- Intermediate filament in hair, 41, 44, 47, 50, 51, **52**, 61, 62
- Internal phase of emulsions, 212, 218, 228, 231
- International Color Handbook*, CTFA, 152
- International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary*, 167
- International Council on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146, 303
- International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145, 158, 159
- Intracellular adhesion molecules, ultraviolet radiation and, 29

- In-use studies, 777–780
- Involucrin, 9
- Iodates, in hair, 67
- Iodine, in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- Iodopropynyl butylcarbamate  
in hair setting/styling products, 644, 645, 646, 649, 650, 664, 665  
as preservative, 286, 287
- Ionic polymers and surfactants, 193
- Ionic surfactants, 193, 216, 217 (*t*),
- Ionized emulsifiers, 218
- Ionizing radiation damage and skin, 20
- Iris of eyes, **80**
- Iron, in hair, 49
- Iron oxide  
blusher, 561  
eyeliner, 569  
eyeshadow, 570, 571  
foundation makeup, 529, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541, 542  
hair setting/styling products, 665  
lipstick, 543, 546, 547  
mascara, 563, 564, 565, 566
- Irritant contact dermatitis, 756–758, 757 (*t*)
- Irritation caused by surfactants, 191–192, 208–209
- Irritation from shampoo, 601
- Isethionates  
as anionic surfactant, 491  
in skin cleansers, 493  
in surfactants, 198
- Isobornyl acrylate hair, in setting/styling products, 659
- Isobutane, in hair setting/styling products, 654
- Isobutylene, in hair setting/styling products, 655, 662
- Isobutylparaben  
in hair setting/styling products, 649  
as preservative, 286, 287
- Isocetyl alcohol, 221
- Isocetyl stearate  
in foundation makeups, 533, 540  
in hair setting/styling products, 649, 650, 654, 665
- Isoflavones as antioxidants, 255
- Isoparaffin  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
in mascaras, 565, 566
- Isopentane, 653
- Isopropanolamine, in cuticle removers, 590
- Isopropyl alcohol  
in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
in permanent hair colors, 689  
in shampoos, 623  
in skin care, 371
- Isopropyl isostearate  
comedogenicity of, 463  
in lipsticks, 548
- Isopropyl myristate  
in after-shave products, 516  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451  
comedogenicity of, 463  
as emulsifier, 221  
in shaving preparations, 513  
in skin care, 373, 374, 382
- Isopropyl palmitate  
comedogenicity of, 463  
as emulsifier, 221
- Isopropylparaben, as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Isostearamidopropyl dimethylamine shampoo, 629
- Isostearic acid  
as emulsifier, 221  
in foundation makeups, 533  
in shaving preparations, 502, 505
- Isostearyl isostearate  
comedogenicity of, 463  
in skin cleansers, 498
- Isostearyl neopentanoate, in foundation makeups, 535, 542
- Isostearyl palmitate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Isostearyl stearoyl stearate  
in foundation makeups, 535  
in lipsticks, 548
- Isotretinoin, in acne products, 468
- Japanese Cosmetic Industry Association, 129
- Japanese cosmetic regulation, 150, 162–172  
active ingredients for use in quasi-drugs and, 165  
bleaches, skin bleaches, 396–397  
color additives, 169  
Comprehensive Licensing Standards (CLS), 166  
CTFA Color Handbook and, 169  
data requirements for registration in, 167–169, 169 (*t*)  
definition of cosmetics vs. drugs, 163–165  
foundation makeup, 523  
ingredient regulations, 169  
ingredients listed on label, 170  
*International Cosmetic Ingredient Dictionary*, 167  
Japanese Pharmacopoeia and, 166  
Japanese Standards of Cosmetic Ingredients (JCSI) and, 166, 167  
Japanese Standards of Food Additives and, 166  
labeling, 169–172  
licensing of cosmetics by category, 165–167  
lipstick colorants, 544  
“medicated cosmetics” defined by, 164–165  
Ministry of Health and Welfare (MHW), 162  
Officially Designated Coal-tar Colors, 167  
Pharmaceutical Affairs Law No. 145, 163  
preservatives, 169, 295, 296, 299  
quasi-drugs defined by, 164–165

- Japanese cosmetic regulation  
(*cont.*)  
raw materials and, 166–167, 168–169  
registration of cosmetic products (*Todokede vs. Shonin*) and, 167  
registration of cosmetic products, 170–171  
safety and, 765–766  
sale of cosmetics and, 163  
Standard for Denatured Alcohol for Industrial Use and, 167
- Japanese Industrial Property Laws, 180
- Japanese Pharmacopoeia, 166
- Japanese Standards of Cosmetic Ingredients (JCSI), 166, 167
- Japanese Standards of Food Additives, 166
- Jasmine oil, 314
- Jasmine wax, 310
- JCIA, 129
- Jjoba oil/wax, 309  
as emulsifier, 221  
in hair setting/styling products, 642, 652
- Juglone, 318
- Juniper oil, 314
- Kaempferol as antioxidant, 255
- Kahlweit (fish) diagram for emulsions, 213, 214, 224, 230
- Kaolin  
in after-shave products, 520  
in blushers, 561  
as contamination source, 277  
in foundation makeups, 524, 526, 529, 538  
in masks, 472, 473, 476–477, 488  
in nail white, 595–596  
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
in shaving preparations, 514
- Karaya gum, 311  
as contamination source, 277  
in emulsions, 226  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
rheological properties of, 244
- Keratin  
in hair colorants/dyes, 671  
in hair, 41, 46–54, 61, 62–65, 695, 696  
helix, 44  
in nail menders, 599  
in nails, 71, 73, 75  
in ocular tissues and eyes, 82–83  
in skin, 3, 8, 6–10, 365  
sorption/desorption in, 54–55, 54  
tensile properties of, 50–53, 50
- Keratin associated proteins (KAPs) in hair, 41, 48, 61
- Keratin gene expression region in hair, 40, 40
- Keratin plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Keratinase in depilatories, 720
- Keratinizing system of skin, 4–7
- Keratinocytes in skin, 3–10, 8, 14–15, 29–31, 262, 386  
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29–31
- Keratinosomes (Odland bodies) in skin, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
- Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry eye), 85
- Keratocytes in ocular tissues and eyes, 83
- Ketoconazole, in dandruff products, 408, 409, 411
- Keratothylin, 8
- Kinins, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Knock-out experiments, 124–125
- Kojic acid, 252, 312, 397
- Kritchevsky condensate and surfactants, 203
- Kukuinut oil, 329
- Kwashiorkor disorder and hair, 40, 43, 49
- L-serine, in skin care, 381
- L-sodium glutamate, in skin care, 381
- Labeling  
animal testing status of labeling, 159, 161–162  
batch numbers in labeling, 157–158  
container size, 170  
contents in labeling, 157  
country of origin in labeling, 140, 159  
efficacy, 161  
E.U. regulation of, 156–159  
expiration dating in labeling, 140, 157  
Federal Trade Commission (FTC) and, 146  
formulation in labeling, 160  
function of products in labeling, 158  
hypoallergenicity in labeling, 140  
identifying product in labeling, 139  
ingredient listing in labeling, 139, 158, 160, 170  
instructions in labeling, 157  
International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145, 158, 159  
Japanese regulation of, 169–172  
language of labeling, 159  
manufacturer name and address in labeling, 139, 157  
method of manufacture in labeling, 160  
net contents (English/metric) in labeling, 139  
OTC drugs, 143  
patent and trademarks on, 181–182  
poison center notification in labeling, 161  
product information package (PIP), 159–161  
raw materials in labeling, 160  
registration of cosmetic products (Japan), 170–171  
registration of manufacturers, 161  
safety, 161  
sunscreens, 424, 425  
tamper-evident packaging and, 140  
U.S. regulation and, 130, 132, 138–140

- warnings on label, 139–140, 157
- Lacquers in nail polishes, 573
- Lacrimal (tear) glands in ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81, 83
- Lactamide MEA, in skin cleansers, 497
- Lactate, as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Lactate esters, in lipsticks, 549
- Lactic acid
  - in acne products, 468
  - in hair setting/styling products, 641, 644
  - as humectant, 365
  - as hygroscopic agent, 267
  - in shaving preparations, 513
  - in skin cleansers, 497
  - in skin care, 379
- Lactobacillus acidophilus* and dental caries, 98
- Lactose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Lactylates in surfactants, 198
- Lakes (pigments)
  - in lipsticks, 546
  - in mascaras, 563
- Lamellar gel phase in emulsions, 216, 228
- Lamellar granules, 7
- Lamellar liquid crystalline phase in emulsions, 216
- Lamina lucida in skin, 5
- Laminar flow, 792
- Laminin 5 in skin, 388
- Laneth 15, in hair straighteners, 712
- Langerhans cells in skin, 4, 11, 20, 357
- Language of labeling, 159
- Lanolin, 118, 330–331, 705, 706
  - as emulsifier, 221
  - comedogenicity of, 463
  - in emulsions, 229
  - in hair setting/styling products, 641
  - in hair straighteners, 712
  - in lipsticks, 548, 550
  - in mascaras, 565, 566
  - in nail strengtheners, 595
  - in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 506, 511
  - in skin cleansers, 498
  - in skin care, 372, 374, 376, 380, 382
- Lanthionine, 63–64
  - formation during hair straightening, 709
  - formation during permanent waving, 698
- Lanugo or prenatal hair, 41
- Lard, 329–330
- Latex or rubber facial masks, 472, 479
- Lathering shaving cream, 502–504
- Lathering shaving sticks, 504
- Lauramide DEA
  - in hair setting/styling products, 660, 661
  - in shampoos, 629
- Lauramide MEA, in acne products, 464
- Lauramidopropyl betaine
  - in acne products, 464
  - in shampoos, 622
  - in skin cleansers, 497
- Lauramidopropyl dimethylamine in surfactants, 202
- Lauramine oxide, in shampoos, 607
- Laureth sulfates, 603
- Laureth-2 benzoate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451
- Laureth-3 carboxylic acid, in shampoos, 629
- Laureth-4
  - in acne products, 467
  - comedogenicity of, 463
  - as emulsifier, 219
- Laureth-7, in hair setting/styling products, 644
- Laureth-9, in foundation makeups, 535, 536
- Laureth-12, in acne products, 468
- Laureth-23, 705, 706
  - in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 654
  - in depilatories, 719
- Lauric acid
  - comedogenicity of, 463
  - in shampoos, 607
  - in shaving preparations, 502
- Lauroyl lysine, in foundation makeups, 529, 530
- Lauryl alcohol in surfactants, 199
- Lauryl lactate, in hair setting/styling products, 652
- Lauryl sulfate, 497, 602–603
- Lauryldimethylammonium-2-hydroxypropyl shampoo, 629
- Lavender oil, 314
- Lavender wax, 310
- Lawson, 318, 669
- Laxness of skin, 22, 33, 34
- Layers of skin, 3–4, 4
- Lead, in hair, 49
- Leaky hose mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Lechner spray system, 346
- Lecithin, 311, 530, 533, 541
- Left-handed helix in hair, 44, 44
- Lemon oil, 314
- Lemongrass oil, 314
- Lens of eyes, 80
- Lentigo maligna, 28
- Letterpress printing for packaging, 884
- Leukonychia of nails, 76
- Licensing of cosmetics by category, Japanese regulation of, 165–167
- Lichen planus infection of nails, 75
- Lighteners, hair, 131, 692–694
- Lignoceric acid, in skin care, 370
- Lime soaps surfactants, 204
- Linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS) shampoo, 605
- Linear wrinkles, 378
- Linoleic acid, 309, 329
- Lip balms, 401–403, 558–559
  - molding, 844–845
  - sunscreens, 433
- Lip gloss, 543, 558–559
- Lip moisturizers, 270
- Lipid base material for lipstick, 547
- Lipid peroxide (LOOH) in antioxidants, 251
- Lipid peroxy radicals (LOO·) antioxidants, 252



- Lipids, 323–331  
 alpha-methylheptadecyl  
   glyceryl ether (GE) as, 328  
 animal sources of, 329–331  
 as contamination source, 277  
 botanicals as sources of,  
   308–310  
 ceramides as, 327–329  
 cholesteryl sulfate as, 324  
 cleaning by shampoos, 615  
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94  
 emulsions, 211, 220, 222,  
   225, 280  
 epidermal, 7  
 fatty acids as, 324, 329–330  
 glycerides as, 324, 329–330  
 glyceryl ether (GE) as, 328  
 hair, 46, 48–48, 61  
 hydrocarbons as, 323  
 hydroxy acids as, 327  
 lanolin as, 330–331  
 in moisturizers, 264  
 in nails, 75  
 natural, 324, 329–330  
 neutral, 324  
 oils as, 323  
 penetration of skin by, 326  
 petrolatum as, 326–327  
 phospholipids, 324  
 plant seed derived oils as, 323  
 polar, 324  
 silicones as, 323  
 skin conductance after  
   application of, 328, 328 (*t*)  
 skin, 3, 6–9, 7 (*t*), 10, 13, 16,  
   264, 323–324, 351–354,  
   460, 461  
 specialty lipids, 323–331  
 sphingolipids as, 324  
 sterols in, 324  
 synthetic, 323  
 transepidermal water loss  
   (TEWL) after application,  
   324, 325, 367, 374  
 triglycerides as, 324, 329–330  
 use of lipids on skin,  
   325–326, 354–356, **355**,  
   364–365  
 Lipliner pencils, 567–568  
 Lipocytes in skin, 4  
 Lipophilic materials, 116, 117,  
   271  
 Liposome production, 825–826
- Lipotropin, ultraviolet (UV)  
 radiation and, 31
- Lipstick, 119, 131, 166,  
 543–558  
 “flaming” to finish, 558  
 amorphous hydrocarbon  
   waxes in, 549  
 antimicrobials in, 551  
 antioxidants in, 551  
 base ingredients, 551  
 bismuth oxychloride in, 546  
 blending of ingredients for,  
   556–557  
 bromoacid solvents for, 547,  
   548  
 candelilla wax in, 549  
 carnauba wax in, 549  
 castor oil in, 548  
 characteristics of, 543  
 chromium pigments in, 546  
 cocoa butter in, 550  
 colorant in, 543–544  
 coloring lips with, 544  
 covering of lips by, 544  
 eosin in, 545, 549  
 ferric ferrocyanide  
   (ultramarine blue), 546  
 filler in, 547  
 filling, hot, 844  
 formulations for, 551–556  
 fragrance in, 551  
 frosted lipsticks, 552  
 glossy lipstick, 552, 553  
 hydrogenated vegetable oil in,  
   550  
 iron oxide pigments in, 543,  
   546, 547  
 lakes pigments for, 546  
 lanolin in, 550  
 lip balms, 558–559  
 lip gloss, 543, 558–559  
 lipid base material for, 547  
 liquid fatty alcohols in, 548  
 manufacture of, 556–558  
 matte lipstick, 553–554  
 microcrystalline waxes in, 549  
 mineral oil in, 549  
 moisturizing lipsticks, 554,  
   555, 556  
 molding of, 557–558,  
   844–845  
 mood lipstick, 552  
 oils in, 547
- organic pigments for, 546  
 paraffin oils in, 550  
 pearlaceous pigments in, 543,  
   547  
 petroleum jelly in, 550  
 pigments in, 545  
 polyethylene in, 550  
 preparation of ingredients for,  
   556–557  
 rheological additives for, 240,  
   241, 245  
 silicones in, 550  
 staining dyes in, 545  
 staining of lips by, 544  
 talc, 547  
 titanium dioxide in, 543,  
   545–547  
 transfer-resistant lipstick, 554  
 ultramarine blue, 546  
 vacuum processing of, 557  
 waxes in, 548, 549, 557  
 wetting agents in, 551  
 Liquid crystal surfactants, 192  
 Liquid crystalline phase in  
   emulsions, 217  
 Liquid extracts of botanicals,  
   307  
 Liquid paraffin, in skin care, 373  
 Liquid soaps, 400  
 Liquid-in-liquid dispersion  
   system for emulsions, 230  
 Liquid-powder (anhydrous)  
   foundations, 541–543  
 Liquid-solid mixing systems,  
   826–829, **826**  
 Lithium carbonate hair  
   straighteners, 712  
 Lithium hydroxide, 701, 721  
 Lithium stearate, in foundation  
   makeups, 538  
 Lithography printing for  
   packaging, 884–885  
 Locust bean gum, 226, 311  
 Loose powder foundations, 541  
 Loricrin in skin, 9  
 Loss of hair, 43–44  
 Lotions, 118, 131, 165, 358,  
   359, 360  
 Low-S proteins in hair, **44**  
 Lubricant characteristics of in  
   shaving preparations,  
   501–502, 506–507

- Lubricity and rheological additive, 235
- Luffa, 472, 478
- Lunula of nails, 71, 72, 73, 589
- Luster (gloss or polish) of tooth, 741
- Luster in hair, 50, 58–59
- Luteolin, 316, 319
- Lycopene, 318
- Lye hair straighteners, 709
- Lymphatic vessels of skin, 19, 352
- Lymphocytes in ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Lyotropic hexagonal phase in emulsions, 216
- Lysine in hair, 45, 67
- Lysinoalanine in hair, 63, 64
- Lysosomes in skin, 15
- Machinery (manufacture of cosmetics)  
 equipment as source of contaminations, 278–279  
 mixing machines and effect on rheological additive, 240–242  
 sterilization procedures as, 278–279  
 testing for contamination in, 279
- Macroemulsions, 192, 212, 222–224, 230, 232
- Macrofibril in hair, 44
- Macrophage colony-stimulating factor, 15
- Magnesium  
 in dental calculus (tartar), 94  
 in hair, 49  
 as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- Magnesium aluminum silicate  
 in acne products, 464, 467, 468  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 453  
 in foundation makeups, 533–535  
 in masks, 473  
 rheological properties of, 244  
 in toothpastes, 733
- Magnesium ascorbyl phosphate, 397
- Magnesium carbonate  
 in after-shave products, 520  
 in blushers, 561  
 in depilatories, 720  
 in foundation makeups, 538  
 particle size, 853  
 in shaving preparations, 514
- Magnesium myristate  
 in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
 in foundation makeups, 538, 540
- Magnesium stearate  
 in shaving preparations, 514  
 in surfactants, 198
- Magnesium sulfate  
 in hair setting/styling products, 642  
 in permanent waves, 704  
 in skin cleansers, 498
- Makeup powder, 131
- Makeup remover, 131
- Malassezia furfur* (dandruff organism), 408
- Male-pattern alopecia, 44
- Maleic anhydride  
 in shampoos, 619  
 in surfactants, 199
- Malignancies of skin, 20, 28  
 ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 32–33
- Malpighian (prickle) layer of epidermis in skin, 4, 5
- Maltitol, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Malvidin as antioxidant, 255
- Manageability of hair, 632
- Manganese, in hair, 49
- Manganese violet eyeshadow, 571
- Mango seed oil, 309
- Mannitol, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Manufacturability of products in new product developments, 115
- Manufacture of cosmetics, 787–874  
 alternatives to hammer mills, 859–860  
 antiperspirants/deodorant fills, 845–846  
 axial flow, 802, **803**  
 ball mills, 832–835, **833**  
 batch emulsion processor, 819–822, **820**  
 batch turnover rate, 848  
 binders, 856–857  
 blending equipment, 853–857, **854**, 855 (*t*)  
 bulk powders storage, 871–873  
 cavitation of liquids in, 823  
 cohesive mixing, 788  
 colloid mills, 830–832, **831**  
 continuous high pressure homogenizers, 822–824, **822**, **823**  
 continuous processes, 852, 853 (*t*)  
 cooling for emulsion products, 866–868  
 cream fills, 841–843  
 deagglomeration in, 828  
 dispersion equipment, 819–822, **820**  
 dispersion fills, 841–843  
 distributive mixing, 788  
 dry continuous processing, 870–873  
 dry mixing systems, 852–865  
 emulsification process, 813–816, **816**  
 emulsion cooling, 864–856  
 emulsion hair conditioner, 864–869  
 emulsion processing equipment, 800–801, 813–815, 816–819, **816–820**  
 emulsion temperature, 815  
 equipment for, 787–874  
 filling processes, 836–846  
 filtration, 788  
 flocculation in, 828  
 flow patterns, 802–804, **803**, 810–811  
 fluid flow, 788  
 Godet product fills, 843–844  
 hair conditioner emulsions, 868  
 hair gels, 868  
 hammer mills, 858–859  
 heat exchanger, **801**  
 heat transfer, 788, 796–799, **797**, 800–801, 849–851

- Manufacture of cosmetics (*cont.*)
- high-flow/low-shear
    - homogenizers, 820
  - high-shear mixers, 819–822, **820**, 848–849
  - high-shear/low-flow
    - homogenizers, 821
  - high-viscosity filling, 839–840
  - high-viscosity mixture, 810–813, **812**, **813**
  - homogenizers, 802–805, **802**, **804**
  - hopper flow, 871–872, **872**
  - hot fills, 841–843
  - impellers, 804–805, **805**, **806**, 811–813, **812**, **813**
  - lip balm fills, 844–845
  - liposome production, 825–826
  - lipstick fills, 844–845
  - liquid-solid wet mixing systems, 826–829, **826**
  - loose powder filling, 861
  - loose powder mixing, 860–861
  - low-viscosity filling, 837–838
  - marine type propeller mixers, **804**, **805**
  - mass transfer, 788, 851–852
  - milling equipment, 830–836, **831**, **833**, **836**
  - mixing, 770, 788, 848
  - mixing index, 808–810, **809**
  - mixing quality, 790–791
  - mixing time, 808–810, **809**
  - multiphase wet mixing systems, 813–814
  - Newtonian flow, 793–795
  - orientation of emulsification phases, 814–815
  - packaging lines, 841, **842**
  - paddle mixers, 804
  - particle size, 853, **853**
  - pearlizing agents, 838–839, 857
  - portable mixers, **806**
  - powder mixers, conventional, 855 (*t*)
  - power consumption of mixers, 806–808, **808**
  - pressed powder filling, 861–863
  - production design
    - considerations, 869–870
  - pumping capacity, 807, **808**
  - radial flow, 802, **803**
  - reactors for cosmetic industry, 799–800
  - Reynolds number, 792–793
  - rheology of mixing, 791–796
  - scale-up, 846–852
  - scale-up for powders, 863–865
  - scale-up of continuous systems, 869
  - segregative mixing, 788
  - shear rates and viscosity, 792–796, **793**, 848–849
  - shearing equipment, 857–859
  - shear-sensitive filling, 840–841
  - single-phase mixing, 801–802
  - stirred tanks, 799–800
  - suppository fills, 844–845
  - surfactants, 815
  - suspension of solids, 829–830
  - tangential flow, 802, **803**
  - temperature and emulsions, 815–816
  - thinning of viscosity, 803
  - three-roll mills, 835–836, **836**
  - turbine impellers, 805–806
  - unit operations, 787–790
  - velocity head, 807, **808**
  - vessel shape on mixing, 810
  - viscosity, 810–811
  - warm fills, 841–843
  - water-in-silicone emulsions, **824**, 824–825
  - wet continuous process, 865–870, **866**
  - wet mixing systems, 801–802
- Manufacturer name and address in labeling, 139, 157
- Marasmus disorder and hair, 40, 43
- Marigold, 316, 318
- Marine extracts in shampoos, 602
- Marine type propeller mixers, **804**, **805**
- Marketability of products in new product developments, 113, 114
- Mascara, 131, 564–566
- anhydrous, 564, 565
  - cake (block) mascara, 564
  - characteristics of, 564
  - curling effect, 566
  - filling process for, 839–840
  - flakeproof, 565
  - oil-in-water emulsion, 565, 566, 567
  - rheological additives for, 245
  - smudgeproof, 564, 565
  - water-based, 565
  - water-in-oil emulsion, 565
  - waterproof, 564, 565
  - waxes, 566
- Mascara for hair, 663, 665
- Masks, 471–483
- abrasives in, 471
  - active ingredients in, 477
  - additives to, 472
  - argillaceous earth (clay) masks, 473–478
  - Bentonite in, 474–476, 478, 482
  - cationic materials in, 478
  - clay in, 471–478, 482
  - emollients in, 477
  - emulsifiers in, 477
  - emulsion system in, 475 (*t*)
  - gums in, 477, 481
  - hydrocolloid masks, 472, 481–482
  - irritation from, 472
  - kaolin in, 476–477
  - latex or rubber masks, 472, 479
  - marketing of, 472
  - pH levels of, 472, 474 (*t*), 476
  - polymers in, 477
  - polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) in, 480
  - resin-strip type masks, 472
  - scrub-type, 476 (*t*)
  - smectite in, 475–476
  - stability of, 477, 478
  - surfactants in, 477, 478
  - vinyl or peelable masks, 480, 481
  - viscosity of, 478
  - wax type, 472, 478–479
  - wet earth treatments as, 471
- Mass transfer, 788, 851–852
- Massage creams, 360, 374, 376

- Mast cells in skin, 15, 17
- Matricaria chamomilla extract, 397
- Matrix of hair, 44, 50–52, 55
- Matrix of nails, 71, 72, 72, 73
- Mechanical blended pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- Mechanical properties of hair, 48
- Mechanical/heat blended pigments in foundation makeups, 530
- “Medicated cosmetics” defined by Japanese regulations, 164–165
- Medula of hair, 39, 40, 44, 48
- Meissner corpuscles in skin, 19
- Melaleuca oil, 315
- Melanin  
antioxidants and, 250  
bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–398, 394  
hair, 67, 68, 69  
skin, 10, 29–31, 35–36  
ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Melanocyte stimulating hormone and UV radiation, 31
- Melanocytes in skin, 4, 10–11
- Melanoma, 28, 33
- Melanosomes in skin, 10–11, 29–31
- Men’s hair colorants, 688
- Menthol  
in acne products, 465  
in after-shave products, 516, 517  
in nail strengtheners, 594  
in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
in shaving preparations, 504, 513  
in toothpastes, 733–734, 737
- Menthyl anthranilate, 421
- Menthyl lactate, in mouthwashes, 747
- Meradimate in sunscreens, 421
- Mercaptans  
in depilatories, 717–718, 721  
in hair, 66  
in permanent waves, 696–698, 701–706
- Mercaptoethanol, in depilatories, 721
- Mercaptopropionic acid, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Mercury, in hair, 49
- Mercury compounds, 134, 301
- Meridiamate sunscreens, 417
- Merkel cells in skin, 4
- Mesenchymal cells in skin, 387
- Mesophase formation in shampoos, 613–614
- Metallic hair dyes, 691
- Metalloproteinase, 15
- Methacrylate copolymers, in shampoos, 623
- Methenamine, 286, 287
- Methicone, in foundation makeups, 530
- Methionine in hair, 67, 68
- Method of manufacture in labeling, 160
- Methoxypropanediol, in shaving preparations, 504
- Methyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579
- Methyl ethyl ketone, in nail polishes, 579
- Methyl gluceth-20, 267
- Methyl gluceth-10, 664
- Methyl groups, microbial growth, effect of, 281
- Methyl salicylate  
in mouthwashes, 747  
in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
in toothpastes, 737
- Methylbenzethonium chloride, in O.T.C. remedies, 404
- Methylcellulose  
in cuticle softeners, 591  
in masks, 477  
rheological properties of, 244  
in shampoos, 623
- Methylcoumarin, 134
- Methyldibromoglutaronitrile, 286, 287
- Methylene chloride, 134
- Methylisobutyl ketone, in nail polishes, 579
- Methylisothiazolinone  
in hair setting/styling products, 286, 287, 645, 646  
in shampoos, 624
- Methylparaben  
in eyeliners, 569  
in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541  
in hair setting/styling products, 645, 646  
in hair straighteners, 713  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
as preservative, 286, 287, 289, 295  
in shampoos, 624, 629
- Mica  
in blushers, 561  
in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
in foundation makeups, 525, 528, 529, 539, 540, 541, 542  
in hair setting/styling products, 665  
in nail polishes, 581  
particle size, 853
- Micellar catalysis in surfactants, 192
- Micelle formation by surfactants, 189–192, 190  
in emulsions, 213, 224, 230  
in shampoos, 603
- Microbial contaminants  
preservatives, 273  
U.S. regulation and, 136–137
- Microbial limits in finished products and preservatives, 302–303
- Microbial metabolism and growth vs. preservatives, 274–276
- Microbial resistance to preservatives, 276
- Micrococci, as contaminants, 283
- Microcrystalline wax  
in hair setting/styling products, 652, 664  
in lipsticks, 549  
in masks, 478  
in skin care, 373, 376, 381
- Microemulsions, 212–213, 222, 224, 229–232, 383
- Microorganisms most frequently found in contaminated products, 283, 283 (*t*)

- Microorganisms for preservative testing, 297–298
- Microvilli lining of ocular tissues and eyes, 81
- Mild (baby) shampoos, 625, 626
- Milks, skin milks, 360
- Milling equipment, 830–836, **831, 833**
- Mineral oil, 118, 378  
as contamination source, 277  
as emulsifier, 221, 227  
in hair setting/styling products, 652  
in hair straighteners, 712  
in lipsticks, 549  
in masks, 478  
rheological properties of, 236  
in shaving preparations, 503, 504, 505  
in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 381, 382, 384
- Minimum erythema dose (MED) for skin, 26, 424
- Ministry of Health and Welfare (MHW), Japanese, 162
- Mink oil, 221
- Misbranded defined, U.S. regulation and, 132–133
- Mixed micelle formation in surfactants, 191–192
- Mixing, 788, 789 (*t*), 848–849
- Mixing of emulsion, 816–819
- Mixing, equipment for, 796 (*t*)
- Mixing, impellers for, 804, 816
- Mixing index, 808–810, **809**
- Mixing machinery and effect on rheological additive, 241–242
- Mixing, rheology of, 791, 802–804
- Mixing time, 808
- Modified occlusive plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Modifiers in hair setting/styling products, 639–640
- Moisture balance in skin/skin care products, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
- Moisture content of nails, 73
- Moisture content of skin, 9, 9, 16–17, 261–263, 351–352, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
- Moisturizers and humectants, 118, 131, 261–272
- botanicals as sources of, 310–311
- efficacy testing of skin moisturizers, 269
- environment factors in moisture content of skin, 268–269, 363–364, **364, 365**
- hair moisturizers, 269–270
- humectants in skin moisturizers, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 361–367, 363 (*t*), **364, 365**
- hydrophilic polymers in skin moisturizers, 268, 365
- hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization, 266, 267 (*t*)
- irritation caused by, 366–367
- lip moisturizers, 270
- lipids in, 264
- nail creams, 592–593
- natural moisturizing factor (NMF) of skin and, 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- occlusive agents in skin moisturizers, 264–266, 265 (*t*)
- product water loss reduction with, 270–271
- shaving preparations, 504
- skin care products, 363–367
- skin moisturizers, 261–270
- softening of skin using, 366
- transepidermal water loss (TEWL) ratios in skin and, 262–264, 266, 268, 324, 325, 367, 374
- Moisturizing base nail coat, 585
- Moisturizing cleansing gel, 498
- Moisturizing creams, 360
- Molding of lipsticks, 557–558
- Molds, as contaminants, 283, 284
- Monensin, 397
- Monilethrix, 43
- Monoethanolamides, 604
- Monoethanolamine, 705, 706  
in cuticle removers, 590  
in hair colorants/dyes, 688  
in permanent hair colors, 690  
in permanent waves, 700
- Monoacylglyceride sulfate, in shampoos, 606
- Monoacylglycerides in surfactants, 204–205
- Morphological components of hair, 44–49, **44**
- Morphology of skin, 3–4, **4**
- Moskene, 151
- Mousse/aerosol type sunscreens, 431, 433
- Mousses, 652–653, 654
- Mouth sprays/drops, 753
- Mouth, teeth, and oral care, 87–107  
acid solubility of tooth and, 90, 91, 98–99  
alignment of tooth and, 88–89  
anticalculus agents for, 96  
aphthous ulcers (canker sores) in, 92 of, 106  
bacterial or microbial flora of, 92–98, 103–105  
*Bacteroides forsythus* as agent of periodontitis in, 101  
bad breath, 94, 103–105  
bleaching or whitening of tooth, 103  
blood vessels of tooth, 89  
breath mints, 104, 105  
breath sprays, 104, 105  
brushing, 96, 98  
calcium in, 90–91, 97  
calculus (tartar) deposits in, 93–96, 94  
caries (decay) in, 90–99  
cemento-enamel junction in tooth, 89, **89**, 90  
cementum in tooth, 89, **89**, 101–102  
cetylpyridinium chloride as preventive of gingivitis, 100  
chlorhexidine as preventive of gingivitis, 100  
cosmetic solutions to common problems, 88 (*t*)  
crown of tooth, 89, **89**  
dental enamel, 89–91, 92, 95  
dental pellicle, 91, 92–93  
dentin of tooth, 89–91, **89**, 101–102

- dental tubules of tooth, 90–91, 102
- dry mouth (xerostomia), 105–106
- enamel of tooth, 89, 89, 90–91, 95, 97
- flossing, 96
- fluids in, 91
- fluoride, 94–100
- Fusobacterium nucleatum* as cause of gingivitis, 100
- gingival crevicular fluid, 92
- gingival margin of tooth, 89, 91
- gingivitis, 91, 99–101, 736
- gums (gingiva), 89, 90, 91
- hypersensitivity of tooth, 101–102
- Lactobacillus acidophilus* as cause of dental caries, 98
- lip moisturizers, 270
- mouthwashes, 104, 105
- nutrition and dental health, 88
- occlusal fissure, 89, 90
- oral malodor, 94, 103–105
- periodontal diseases, 99–101
- periodontal ligament of tooth, 89, 90
- periodontitis, 91, 99–101
- pH levels, critical pH, teeth/in tooth, 90, 92
- plaque, 93–98
- Porphyromonas gingivalis* as agent of periodontitis, 101
- Prevotella intermedia* as agent of gingivitis, 100
- primary (baby) teeth, 87–88
- problems of, 95–106
- recession of tooth, 101
- remineralization of tooth, 99
- rinses, 98
- rinsing, 104, 105
- root of tooth, 89, 89
- saliva and, 91–98
- salivary glands and, 89, 91–92
- secondary (adult) teeth, 88
- sensitivity in tooth, 91, 101–102
- Sjogren's syndrome (dry mouth), 105
- soft tissues of, 92
- sores or ulcers in, 92
- spaces (interproximal spaces) around teeth, 90, 94
- staining of tooth, 102–103
- Streptococcus mutans* as agent of dental caries, 98
- sugarless gum, 98
- tartar deposits, 93, 94–96
- teeth, 87–91, 89
- third molar (wisdom teeth), 88
- tooth anatomy, 89, 90–91, 101–102
- tooth pulp, 89, 89
- toothpastes (See Toothpaste and dentifrices)
- triclosan as preventive of gingivitis, 100
- volatile sulfur compounds in bad breath, neutralization of, 105
- wisdom teeth, 88
- xerostomia, 105–106
- zinc salts in toothpastes, 96
- Mouthwashes, 104, 105, 131, 164, 166, 745–753
- active ingredients in, 749
- alcohol in, 746
- antibacterial function of, 745
- antimicrobials in, 748
- antiseptic properties of, 747
- breath-freshening type, 752
- buffers in, 749
- cationic quaternary antibacterials in, 748
- cetylpyridinium chloride (CPC), 748
- chlorine dioxide in, 749
- clinical tests of, 752
- cosmetic type, 745
- emulsions in, 747
- flavoring in, 745–747
- fluoride in, 749
- fluoride type, 745
- foaming characteristics of, 745
- formulations for, 750–751
- functions of, 745, 746
- humectants in, 747
- hydrogen peroxide in, 749
- ingredients of, 746
- manufacture of, 751
- menthyl lactate, 747
- methyl salicylate, 747
- packaging of, 751–752
- phenolics in, 747
- phenyl salicylate, 747
- polysorbates in, 748
- potassium acesulfame in, 747
- prebrushing rinse type, 745
- saccharin in, 747
- safety of, 752
- sanguinaria extract, 748
- sodium bicarbonate, 750
- sodium saccharin in, 747
- solubilizers in, 747
- solvents in, 746
- spray/drop fresheners, 753
- surfactants in, 747
- sweeteners in, 747
- testing of, 752–753
- triclosan in, 748
- viscosity, 745
- water in, 746
- xanthan gum, 750
- zinc salts in, 749
- Mucin in ocular tissues and eyes, 81, 83
- Mucocutaneous end organs in skin, 19
- Mucopolysaccharides, in saliva, 91
- Multiphase wet mixing systems, 813–814
- Multiphase oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 223, 226–228, 227
- Multiple emulsions, 213, 382, 384, 385
- Muscles of skin, 19
- Musculature of ocular tissues and eyes, 80
- Musk ambrette, 134
- Musk tibetene, 151
- Myricetin as antioxidant, 255
- Myristic acid
- comedogenicity of, 463
- in shaving preparations, 502
- in skin cleansers, 498
- Myristyl myristate
- comedogenicity of, 463
- in hair setting/styling products, 652
- Myrrh oil, 315
- Nacreous pigments in nail polishes, 580–582

- N-acyl methyltaurates (AMT), in shampoos, 605
- n-Acyl polypeptide condensates, in shampoos, 606
- N-acyl sarcosinates, in shampoos, 605
- Nail bleach, 591–592
- Nail coat, moisturizing base, 585
- Nail cream, 131, 592–593, 592
- Nail hardeners, 75, 587
- Nail plate of nails, 71–73, **72**
- Nail polish, 131, 166, 573–588, 573
- abrasive (dry) nail polish, 596–597
  - acrylic polymers in, 575
  - additives to, 582–583
  - adipates in, 577
  - alcohols, 578
  - application of, 574
  - aromatic solvents in, 578
  - base polish, 584
  - bismuth oxychloride, 581
  - buffing powders, 596–597
  - characteristics of, 574
  - citrates in, 577
  - clays in, 583
  - clear nail base coat, 584
  - clear nail top coat, 585
  - colorants in, 580–582
  - control of productions in, 583–584
  - cuticle massage cream, 593
  - cuticle remover, 589–591
  - cuticle softener, 131, 591
  - drier for, 586, 597–598
  - dry nail polish, 596–597
  - drying time, 574, 577, 578, 597–598
  - esters in, 578
  - evaporation rates of solvents in, 579, 579 (*t*)
  - film-formers in, 575–576
  - formation of, 573–575
  - formulas for, 584–587
  - glossy color and appearance in, 574
  - hardener for nails in, 587
  - history of, 573
  - innocuousness of, 574, 578
  - lacquers in, 573
  - mending compositions, 598–599
  - mica in, 581
  - moisturizing base nail coat, 585
  - nacreous pigments in, 580–582
  - nitrocellulose in, 573, 575–576, 598, 599
  - no-nitrocellulose base coat, 585
  - pearl essence (guanine) in, 581
  - pearlaceous material in, 581
  - phthalates in, 577
  - pigments in, 580–582
  - pink nail polish, 586
  - plasticizers in, 576–577
  - polish remover, 587
  - polymers in, 575
  - production of, 583–584
  - raw materials for, 575–583
  - red nail polish, 586
  - resins in, 577
  - rheological additives for, 240, 245, 582, 583
  - rhodamines in, 573
  - safety of, 574, 578
  - settling of, 582
  - solvents in, 577–579
  - stability of, 574–575, 582
  - strengtheners for nails in, 582, 594–595
  - toluene in, 578, 584
  - toxicity in, 578
  - viscosity of, 576, 579, 582
  - wear characteristics of, 574, 575
  - xylene, 578
- Nail polish remover, 131, 587
- Nail white, 595–596
- Nailbed in nails, 71–73, **72**
- Nails, 14, 71–78
- absence of (anonychia), 74
  - artificial fingernails, 598
  - artificial nail use, 74, 75
  - Beau's lines in, 76
  - bleach, 591–592
  - blood vessels of, 73–74
  - brittleness of, 75
  - calcium in, 73
  - Candida* infections in, 75, 77
  - composition of, 73
  - connective tissue of, **72**
  - cuticle of, 71, **72**, 73, 589
  - dermatitis and, 74, 75
  - development of, 72–73
  - diagnosis of illness using, 71, 76–77
  - discoloration of, 77
  - dorsal nail plate of, **72**
  - elongators, artificial nails, 598
  - epidermis and, **72**, 73
  - epithelium of nailbed in, 73
  - fat content of, 73
  - finger- vs. toenail growth rates, 72, 74
  - formation of, 72–73
  - fungal infections of, 75, 76–77
  - gelatin use and, 75
  - growth rate of, 72–74
  - handedness determined by lunula/nailbed in, 71
  - hardeners for, 75
  - histology of, 73
  - hyponychium in, 71, **72**
  - infection of, 75, 76, 77
  - inflammation of, 77
  - keratin in, 71, 73, 75
  - keratinizing structures of, 71
  - leukonychia of, 76
  - lichen planus infection of, 75
  - lipids in, 73, 75
  - lunula of, 71, 72, 73, 589
  - matrix of, 71, 72, **72**, 73
  - mending compositions, 598–599
  - moisture content of, 73, 592–593
  - morphology, 71–78
  - nail plate of, 71, 72, 73
  - nail products and U.S. regulation, 135
  - nail unit of, 71
  - nailbed in, 71, **72**, 73
  - nutritional factors affecting, 74
  - onychocytes in, 72–73
  - onychomycosis in, 76–77
  - paronychia in, 77
  - pathologies of, 74–77
  - pitting of, 76
  - prenatal development of, 72
  - proximal nail fold of, 71, 72, 73
  - Pseudomonas* infections in, 75, 77

- psoriasis and, 75–77  
ridging (onychorrhexis) in, 75  
separation of, from nailbed (onycholysis), 75  
shedding of (onychomadesis), 75  
splitting (onychoschizia) in, 76  
spoon-shaped (koilonychia), 76  
striations (onychorrhexis) in, 75  
structure of, 71, 72  
trauma to, 75  
ultrastructure of, 73  
varnish/polish removers and, 75  
varnish/polishes for, 75  
whitening of, 76  
yeast infections of, 75  
yellow nail syndrome and, 74, 77
- Naphthol, in permanent hair colors, 684, 690
- Naringin as antioxidant, 255
- National Formulary and defining drugs, 131
- Natural lipid, 324
- Natural moisturizing factor (NMF) of skin, 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- “Natural product” defined, 305–306
- “Naturally derived” defined, 305
- “Nature identical” defined, 306
- Neomelanogenesis in skin, 25
- Neopentyl glycol  
dicaprylate/dicaprate, in foundation makeups, 535, 542
- Neoplasms in skin, 21, 22, 33, 34
- Nerve growth factor, 15
- Nerves in skin, 18–19
- Net contents (English/metric) in labeling, 139
- Neurocutaneous skin biology, 388–389
- Neutralizer  
in cold waving processes, 704  
in hair setting/styling products, 658  
in hair straighteners, 711
- Newton/meters to measure rheological additive, 236
- Newtonian flow, 794
- Newtonian fluids in rheological additive, 236, 237, 793, 794, 795
- Newton’s rings phenomenon and surfactants, 187
- Niacinamide, in skin cleansers, 497
- Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 23
- Night creams, 131, 360, 374, 376
- Nitric acid, in nail polishes, 575
- Nitric oxide, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Nitrites, 151
- Nitro-2-bromo-propanediol, 290, 292
- Nitroaminophenols, in hair colorants/dyes, 676, 678–679, 678
- Nitrocellulose, in nail polishes, 573, 575–576, 598–599
- Nitrophenylenediamines, in hair colorants/dyes, 676–678, 677
- Nitrosamines, 134, 151, 607
- No-lye hair straightener, 712
- Non-aerosol sprays, 120–121
- Non-Newtonian fluids in rheological additives, 236, 794
- Non-U.S. manufacturers and U.S. regulation and, 137
- Nonammonia alkalizers, in hair colorants/dyes, 688
- Nonionic emulsions emulsions, 220
- Nonionic polymers and surfactants, 193
- Nonionic surfactants, 191–193, 195, 202–207, 208, 494  
in emulsions, 217–218, 217 (t), 227  
microbial growth in, 280  
in preservatives, 292  
in shampoos, 606–608
- Nonkeratinous proteins in hair, 61
- Nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC), 33
- Nonoxynol 10  
in hair setting/styling products, 655  
in nail strengtheners, 594
- Nonoxynol-9, as emulsifier, 219
- Nonoxynols, in shampoos, 608
- Nonperoxide cold wave lotion, 706
- Nonproteinaceous material in hair, 48–49
- Norbixin, 317
- Nordihydroguaiaretic acid, 252, 253, 312
- North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 179
- Noxious sensory stimuli testing, 772
- Nuclear remnant of hair, 44
- Nutrients for microbial growth, in products, 280–281
- Nutrition and oral care, 88
- Nutritional effects  
on skin, 388  
on nails, 74  
on hair, 40, 43
- Nylon  
in eyeshadows, 570  
in foundation makeups, 529, 530, 540, 542  
in nail polishes, 582
- Oat flour, 472  
masks, 478
- Oatmeal, 311
- Occlusal fissure in tooth, 89, 90
- Occlusion of skin in skin care products, 357
- Occlusive agents in skin moisturizers, 264–266, 265 (t)
- Occlusive plug mechanism of sweat reductions, 440
- Octacalcium phosphate, in dental calculus (tartar), 94
- Octadecanoic acid in surfactants, 198
- Octinoxate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421



- Octisalate in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421  
 Octocrylene in sunscreens, 417, 420, 421  
 Octodecyl stearate, in skin cleansers, 498  
 Octoxynol-9, in nail strengtheners, 595  
 Octylacrylamide, in hair setting/styling products, 661  
 Octyldodecanol, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455  
 Octyldodeceth-20, in skin care, 375  
 Octyldodecyl neopentanoate, in foundation makeups, 542  
 Octyldodecyl stearate, in moisturizers, 265  
 Octylhydroxystearate, in lipsticks, 548  
 Octylpalmitate  
   in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452  
   in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
   in foundation makeups, 537, 540, 541, 542  
   in hair setting/styling products, 649  
   in lipsticks, 548  
 Ocular tissues and eye, 79–86  
   allergic reactions in, 84–85, 768–769, 771  
   anterior chamber of eyes in, 80  
   apocrine sweat glands in, 80  
   blink reflex in, 80, 83  
   blood vessels of, 81–82  
   Bowman's layer in, 82  
   bulbar conjunctiva of eyes in, 80  
   *Candida* infection of, 85  
   ciliary bodies of eyes, 80  
   collagen in, 82  
   conjunctiva of, 81–82  
   conjunctival tissue in, 79  
   contact lens use and, 84, 86  
   contaminated products and, 284  
   cornea of, 80, 80, 82–84  
   corneal stroma in, 82  
   cosmetics, entry into eye, 79, 85–86  
   Descemet's membrane in, 83  
   dry eye conditions in, 85  
   endothelium in, 83  
   epithelium of, 81, 82  
   eyelids as, 79–81  
   glycocalyx in, 81  
   glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) in, 82  
   goblet cells in, 81, 83  
   hair follicles in, 80  
   hemidesmosomes in, 81  
   hydration of, 84  
   infections of, 85, 86, 284  
   inflammation of eyelids in, 82, 84–85  
   innervation of, 80, 81  
   iris of eyes, 80  
   irritancy testing in, 768–769, 771  
   keratin in, 82–83  
   keratoconjunctivitis sicca (dry eye), 85  
   keratocytes in, 83  
   lacrimal (tear) glands in, 80, 81, 83  
   lens of eyes, 80  
   lymphocytes in, 81  
   microvilli lining of, 81  
   mucin in, 81, 83  
   musculature of, 80  
   oxygen absorption by, 84  
   photoallergic reactions of, 85  
   posterior chamber of eyes in, 80  
   precorneal tear layer in, 79–80  
   proteoglycans in, 82  
   sebaceous glands in, 80  
   staphylococcal infection of, 85  
   stroma in, 82  
   submucosal lamina propria in, 81  
   tear drainage in, 80, 81  
   tear layer of, 83  
   toxic reactions in, 84–85  
   transparency of cornea in, 84  
   vitreous body of eyes, 80  
 Odland bodies, 5–6, 16, 324, 367  
 Officially Designated Coal-tar Colors, Japanese regulation, 167  
 Oil in emulsions, 214, 223  
 Oil phase components of in skin care products, 362  
 Oil type sunscreens, 431, 433  
 Oil-based foundation makeup, 526, 530, 532–535  
 Oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 212, 214, 216, 220, 222–226, 280, 453, 532–535, 565, 566  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
   in skin care products, 361, 370, 371, 376, 380  
   in sunscreens, 428–429, 428  
 Oil-in-water-in-oil (O/W/O) emulsions, 213, 382, 384  
 Oils, 116, 117, 118, 119  
   as contamination source, 277  
   foundation makeup, 535  
   in hair setting/styling products, 642, 648  
   as lipid, 323  
   in lipsticks, 547  
   in shaving preparations, 503, 506  
   in skin care products, 362, 367, 370, 371  
   in skin, 367, 462–465  
 Oily skin (*See* Acne products)  
 Ointment type sunscreens, 431  
 Ointments, 118  
 Oleate  
   in foundation makeups, 533  
   in skin cleansers, 497  
 Olefin sulfonates  
   as anionic surfactant, 491  
   surfactants, 199  
 Oleic acid  
   in emulsifier, 221  
   in permanent hair colors, 689  
   in semipermanent hair colors, 682  
   in shampoos, 623  
 Oleth-3, in hair straighteners, 712  
 Oleth-5, in skin care, 383  
 Oleth-20  
   as emulsifier, 219  
   in hair setting/styling products, 640, 641, 643, 649, 654, 655, 664  
   in skin care, 375, 383  
   in skin cleansers, 497

- Oleyl alcohol  
 comedogenicity of, 463  
 in hair straighteners, 711  
 in permanent hair colors, 689  
 in shaving preparations, 513  
 in skin cleansers, 499
- Olibanum resin, 315
- Olive oil, 306  
 in hair setting/styling products, 642  
 PEG-6 esters in surfactants, 205  
 in skin care, 370, 383
- One-electron oxidation and antioxidants, 249
- Onychocytes in nails, 72–73
- Onychomycosis in nails, 76–77
- Opacifying agents in shampoos, 623
- Opaque emulsifiers and emulsions, 211, 212
- Operational/manufacturing considerations in new product developments, 115
- Optimization of formulas in, 124–125
- Oral care products (*See* Mouth, teeth, and oral care), 88, 143, 725–725  
 denture cleansers, 743–745  
 mouthwashes, 745–753  
 solid dentifrice, 739  
 testing dentifrices, 739–742  
 toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743  
 toothpowders, 738–739
- Oral malodor in oral care, 103–105
- Orange wax, 310
- Organic polymers in emulsions, 225
- Organic salts shampoo, 606, 623
- Organoclays in rheological additives, 243, 245
- Orientation of emulsification phases, 814–815
- Orthocortical cells in hair, 44, 48
- Osmotic pressure and microbial growth, 281
- Ostwald ripening of particles in emulsions, 230
- OTC Drug Review*, 145
- Outer root sheath (ORS) of hair, 39, 40
- Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, 140–144, 393–394  
 acne (*See* Acne products)  
 active ingredients in, 402, 406  
 analgesic preparations, external, 143  
 antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 142, 408–412, 630  
 antimicrobial products, 142, 144–145  
 antiperspirant products, 142, 437, 449  
 antiseptic hand washes, 405  
 antiseptics for the skin, 403–407  
 astringent products, 142, 412  
 bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–398  
 callus removers, 412–413  
 categories of, 142–143  
 cold sore treatments, 401–403  
 corn removers, 412–413  
 Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 145  
 dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)  
 defining cosmetics vs. drugs, 140–142, 393–394  
 European-American Phytomedicines Coalition (EAPC), 145  
 fever blister treatments, 401–403  
 inspections, 143  
 international concerns and regulation of, 145–146  
 International Conference on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146  
 International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145  
 labeling, 143  
 lip balms, 401–403  
 oral care products, 143  
*OTC Drug Review*, 145  
 patient preoperative skin antiseptics, 405, 406–407  
 relationship of cosmetic products to drugs, 140–142, 393–394  
 safety in, 144  
 skin care products as, 393–413  
 skin protectant products, 143, 401–403  
 soaps, 398–401  
 status of, 142–143  
 sunscreens, 143, 145  
 surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407  
 U.S. regulation and, 140–144, 393–394  
 wart removers, 412–413  
 wrinkle removers, 141
- Oxidation, 898  
 auto-oxidative dyes, 690–691  
 bleaching of hair, 692–694, hair colorants/dyes, 682–690, 685–686, 686  
 hair, 66–68  
 lightening of hair, 692–694  
 preservatives, 275  
 reduction step in permanent waves, 696–698  
 reoxidation step in permanent waves, 698–699
- Oxidation zone in hair, 41
- Oxidative degradation of emulsions, 231
- Oxidative hair coloring, 682–690, 686
- Oxidizing (bleaching) agents for hair, 67
- Oxalcohol in surfactants, 199, 203
- Oxybenzone, 422  
 E.U. regulation of, 153  
 in sunscreens, 417, 420
- Oxygen absorption by ocular tissues and eye, 84
- Oxygen reactions and antioxidants, 247
- Oxygen tension and microbial growth, 282
- Ozokerite, 309  
 in hair setting/styling products, 652  
 in lipsticks, 549  
 in mascaras, 565, 566

- Ozone layer and UV radiation, 26
- PABA in sunscreens, 422, 425, 427
- Packaging, 875–888
- aerosols, 334–336, **335**
  - aluminum tubes, 881
  - aminoplastic packaging, 880
  - atmos dispensing system, 346
  - bag-in-a-can spray systems, 345
  - “blooming” gels, 509–510
  - closures, 885–886
  - codispensing systems, 347
  - collapsible tubes, 881–882
  - compression molding, 881
  - as contamination source, 279
  - container size, 170
  - design, 876
  - development and design of, 876
  - dry spray dispensers, 346–347
  - EP spray system, 346
  - extrusion blow molding, 880
  - F-Z finger pump foamer system, 347
  - filling processes for, 836–846, 841, **842**
  - flexible packaging, 882–883
  - flexography printing for packaging, 884
  - glass technology, 883–884
  - injection blow molding, 881
  - injection molding, 880
  - laminated tubes, 882
  - Lechner spray system, 346
  - letterpress printing for packaging, 884
  - lithography printing for packaging, 884–885
  - mouthwashes, 751–752
  - Packaging Waste Directive in E.U., 162
  - paper and printing, 884
  - pencils, 567–568
  - permeation testing of, 887–888
  - phenolic packaging, 880
  - piston spray system, 346
  - plastic bottles, 878
  - plastic packaging, 877–883
  - plastic tubes, 881–882
  - polyamide packaging, 879
  - polycarbonate packaging, 879
  - polyester packaging, 879
  - polyethylene packaging, 878–879
  - polypropylene packaging, 879
  - polystyrene packaging, 879–880
  - polyvinyl chloride packaging, 880
  - preservatives, 274
  - printing, 884
  - product information package (PIP), 159–161
  - pump activated spray systems, 346–347
  - rotogravure printing for packaging, 885
  - sepro can spray systems, 345–346
  - skin care products, 358, 359
  - tamper-evident packaging and, 140
  - technical aspects of designs, 876–877
  - testing of, 886–888
  - thermoforming, 881
  - thermoplastic resins, 878
  - thermosetting resins, 880
  - U.S. regulation and, 132
  - valves for aerosols, 336–338, **337**
- Packaging Waste Directive of E.U., 162
- Packing parameters (P) in surfactants, 191
- Packs for skin care, 165
- Paddle mixers, 786, **786**
- Padimate O sunscreens, 417, 422
- Paint, facial, 131
- Palm kernel glycerides, in skin cleansers, 497
- Palm kernel oil, 310
- Palm kernelamide, in acne products, 464
- Palm oil, 310, 318
- in shaving preparations, 505
  - in skin care, 375
- Palmitic acid, in shaving preparations, 502, 509, 510
- Panthenol, 368, 472, 641
- Paper and printing, 884
- Papillary sublayer of skin, 3–4
- Paraben esters, as preservative, 295
- Paraben
- in foundation makeups, 535
  - as preservative, 289, 290, 295
  - in toothpastes, 734
- Paracortical cells in hair, **44**, 48
- Paraffin
- as emulsifier, 221
  - in lipsticks, 550
  - in moisturizers, 265
  - in shampoos, 615
  - in skin care, 373, 376
- Parath-40, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455
- Paronychia in nails, 77
- Particle sizes in emulsions, 213, 213 (*t*), 214, 853, **853**
- Partition coefficient and effectiveness of preservatives, 290–291
- Pascals to measure rheological additive, 236
- Pastes, 118
- Patch testing, 769–770
- performance data for surfactants, 207 (*t*)
  - for mildness in skin cleansers, 488–489
- Patchouli oil, 315
- Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), 177
- Patents, 175–183
- European Patent Convention (EPC), 177, 179–180
  - infringement issues, 180–183
  - Japanese Industrial Property Laws, 180
  - labeling, 181–182
  - North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 179
  - Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), 177
  - Trade-related Aspects of Intellec. Prop. Law (TRIPs), 177, 180
  - United States and, 177–178
  - what is patentable, 178–179
  - worldwide patent system, 177–178
- Pathologies of nails, 74–77

- Patient preoperative skin  
antiseptics, 405, 406–407
- PCA  
as hygroscopic agent, 267  
as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267, 365
- Peanut oil, 310
- Pearl essence (guanine) in nail polishes, 581
- Pearlceous materials, 838–839, 857  
in blushers, 561  
in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
in conditioning shampoos, 628  
in foundation makeups, 524, 526, 529, 538, 541  
in hair setting/styling products, 641  
in lipsticks, 543, 546, 547  
in nail polishes, 581  
in shaving preparations, 504, 510
- Peelable facial masks, 480, 481
- PEG (See Polyethylene glycol)
- Pellicle of tooth, 91, 92–93
- Pemphigus, 17
- Pencils, 567–568
- Penetration of light into skin, 24
- Penetration of shampoos, 613–614
- Pentaerythrityl rosinatate, in mascaras, 565, 566
- Pentaerythrityl tetraethylhexanoate, 385
- Pentaerythrityl tetraisostearate, in foundation makeups, 535
- Pentaerythrityl tetrastearate, in acne products, 465
- Pentamethyl-4-6-dinitroindane, 151
- Peppermint oil, 315, 746
- Peppermint water, 315
- Peptides, acylated peptides in surfactants, 197
- Peracids, in hair, 67
- Perborates, in hair, 67
- Performance of cosmetic products, 773–781  
blood flow testing in, 776  
capacitance testing in, 774–775  
colorimetry testing in, 775  
dermatologic assessment questionnaires in, 780–781  
elasticity testing in, 774  
evaporimetry testing in, 775  
image analysis in, in vivo, 777  
impedance (conductance) testing in, 774  
in vitro testing for, 773–776  
in vivo testing for, 776–781  
in-use studies and, 777–780  
profilometry testing in, 773–774  
regression analysis in, 777  
sebum assessment testing in, 776  
squamestry testing in, 774  
thickness testing in, 775
- Perfluoropolymethylisopropeth phosphate, in eyeshadows, 570
- Perfumes (See Fragrance)
- Periodontal diseases, 99–101
- Periodontal ligament, 89, 90
- Periodontitis, 99–101
- Permanent hair coloring, 670, 682–690
- Permanent wave neutralizers, 204
- Permanent wave products, 66, 131, 165, 695, 696–708  
acid cold wave solution, 705  
alkaline cold wave solution, 705  
buffered cold wave solution, 705  
chemical heating methods (heating packages), 701  
choice of lotions in, 707  
cold waving processes, 701–705  
cross-linking in, 699  
curler diameter choice for, 708  
cysteine cold wave lotion, 706  
dissociation constants for mercaptide waving agents, 703 (*t*)  
disulfide bond in, 696–698  
evaluation of, 707–708  
formulas for, 700  
formulations for, 704–705  
fragrance, 705, 707  
glyceryl thioglycolate (GMTG), 701  
heat waving processes, 699–701  
mercaptans in, 696–698, 703  
neutralizer for, 704  
neutralizing step in, 708  
nonperoxide cold wave lotion, 706  
penetration rate for, 708  
perfuming of thioglycolate lotions, 705, 707  
peroxide cold wave lotion, 706  
processing time for, 707–708  
reducing agents for cold waving process, 702–704  
reduction step in, 696–698  
regulation of, 135  
reoxidation step in, 698–699  
stop action cold wave lotion, 706  
temperature variation in, 707  
thioglycolic acid in, 697, 702–704  
thiols in, 696–698
- Permanganate, in hair, 67
- Permeability of skin, 16–17, 22
- Permeation testing of packaging, 887–888
- Peroxide cold wave lotion, 706
- Peroxide value (POV) for antioxidants, 258
- Peroxides in antioxidants, 248, 250
- Personnel as source of contaminations, 279–280
- Petrolatum, 118, 357, 378, 385  
as emulsifier, 221, 227  
in hair setting/styling products, 652, 664  
as lipid, 326–327,  
in lipsticks, 549, 550  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
in masks, 478  
in moisturizers, 264, 265  
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
in skin cleansers, 499  
in skin care, 373, 374, 376, 377, 381, 384  
in straighteners, 712

- Petrolatum (*cont.*)  
 transepidermal water loss (TEWL) and, 326–327
- pH and sorption/desorption characteristics of hair, 55–56, 66
- pH levels  
 acne products and, 464  
 critical pH, teeth/in tooth, 90, 92  
 effectiveness of preservatives, 289–290  
 emulsions, 280  
 facial masks, 472, 474 (*t*)  
 masks, 476  
 microbial growth, 281  
 microbial metabolism and growth, 274–276  
 shampoo, 609, 623  
 skin and skin care products, 356–357, 362  
 soap, 486
- Phagolysosomes, in skin, 15
- Pharmaceutical Affairs Law No. 145, Japanese cosmetic regulation, 163
- Phase inversion in cleansing products, 371
- Phase inversion temperature (PIT) in emulsions, 224–225, 228, 231
- Phenethyl alcohol, 286, 287
- Phenol, 292, 293  
 in over-the-counter remedies, 404  
 in skin cleansers, 495
- Phenol index HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Phenolic acids as antioxidants, 256
- Phenolic ammonium, preservative, 295
- Phenolic antioxidants, 251–253
- Phenolic packaging, 880
- Phenolics, 737  
 in mouthwashes, 747  
 as preservative, 290  
 in skin care products, 362
- Phenoxyethanol  
 in foundation makeups, 535  
 in hair setting/styling products, 649  
 as preservative, 286, 287, 289, 295  
 in shaving preparations, 508
- m*-Phenylenediamines, in permanent hair colors, 684
- p*-Phenylenediamines, in permanent hair color, 683, 685, 689
- Phenyl mercuric acetate, 286, 287
- Phenyl salicylate, in mouthwashes, 747
- Phenyl trimethicone  
 in foundation makeups, 537  
 in hair setting/styling products, 652, 660, 661, 664
- Phenylalanine in hair, 68
- Pheomelanins of melanin in skin, 10–11
- Phosphates  
 in saliva, 91  
 in skin cleansers, 493
- Phosphated perfluoro, in foundation makeups, 530
- Phosphines, in hair, 63
- Phospholipids  
 antioxidants, 257  
 microbial growth in, 280  
 in surfactants, 200
- Phosphoric acid, 706  
 in hair straighteners, 713  
 in surfactants, 200, 206
- Phosphorus, in dental calculus (tartar), 94
- Phosphorylation vs. preservatives, 275
- Photo-oxidation and antioxidants, 250
- Photosensitization of products, U.S. regulation and, 130
- Photoaging skin, 22, 28, 33–34, 33, 34, 263
- Photoallergic responses, 28  
 of ocular tissues and eyes, 85  
 photoallergic dermatitis, 760–761
- Photocarcinogenesis, 26, 32–33
- Photodamage, 28
- Photodermatoses, 28, 35
- Photopatch testing, 770–771
- Photosensitivity, 28, 35  
 Photostability testing of sunscreens, 426
- Phototoxic dermatitis, 760–761
- Phthalic acid  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455  
 in nail polishes, 577  
 in shampoos, 627
- Phthalic anhydride, in nail polishes, 577
- Phycocyanobilin, 319
- Phytates as antioxidants, 249
- Phytosterols, 309
- Pigmentary system of skin, 10–11, 29–31
- Pili arrector muscles of skin, 19, 43
- PIP, 159–161
- Piston spray system, 346
- Pitting of nails, 76
- pK values and thiol production in hair, 66
- Placenta extract, 135, 397
- Plant seed–derived oils as lipid, 323
- Plant-derived antioxidants in antioxidants, 253
- Plant-derived raw materials, 308–310
- Plantain, 320
- Plaque on teeth, 93–98
- Plastic behavior in rheological additives, 236, 237
- Plastic bottles, 878
- Plastic fingernails, 598
- Plastic packaging, 877–883
- Plasticizers  
 in hair setting/styling products, 639  
 in nail polishes, 576–577
- Platelet-derived growth factor, 15
- “Play time” of after-shave balms, 517–520
- Poison center notification in labeling, 161
- Polarization in hair, 62
- Polarized light microscopic examination of emulsions, 217
- Polawax hair straighteners, 712
- Poloxamer, 407, 731, 750, 751  
 in mouthwashes, 747

- in shampoos, 608
- in skin cleansers, 494
- in surfactants, 207
- Polyacrylamide, in hair setting/styling products, 644
- Polyacrylate copolymer, in foundation makeups, 529
- Polyacrylic acid, in shaving preparations, 505
- Polyalkoxylated ether glycolates, in shampoos, 606
- Polyamide packaging, 879
- Polyamino sugar condensate, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Polycarbonate packaging, 879
- Polyester packaging, 879
- Polyesters, in nail polishes, 577, 582
- Polyethoxylated alcohol, in shampoos, 623
- Polyethoxylated materials in surfactants, 202–203, 202
- Polyethylene beads, in masks, 478
- Polyethylene
  - in acne products, 464
  - in eyeshadows, 571
  - in foundation makeups, 529, 538, 540
  - in moisturizers, 265
  - in packaging, 878–879
  - in skin cleansers, 499
  - in skin care, 373
- Polyethylene glycol (PEG)
  - as humectant, 363
  - in lipsticks, 550
  - in mascaras, 565, 566
  - microbial growth in, 281
  - PEG-4, 219, 629
  - PEG-6, 384, 498
  - PEG-8, 219, 516, 640, 682
  - PEG-9, 499
  - PEG-10, 385, 267
  - PEG-15 stearamonium chloride, 630
  - PEG-20 glyceryl stearate, 227, 228, 652
  - PEG-24, 712
  - PEG-25, 712
  - PEG-30 laurate, 500
  - PEG-32, 737
  - PEG-40 stearate, 219, 640, 641, 664, 496
- PEG-45, 497
- PEG-55, 497, 629
- PEG-100 stearate, 219, 510
- PEG-120 methyl glucose dioleate, 623, 626
- PEG-150 acne products, 465
- PEG-400, 375
- PEG-60, 385, 640, 641, 654, 664
- PEG-75, 468, 641, 664, 712
- PEG-80 sorbitan laurate, 608, 626
- PEG-1500, 377, 380, 383
- PEG-4000, 383
  - as preservative, 291, 293
  - as rheological additive, 243, 244–245
  - in toothpastes, 732
- Polyethylene packaging, 860–861
- Polyethylene terephthalate (PET) plastic for aerosols, 336
- Polyglyceryl methacrylate, 664
- Polyglyceryl esters, 205
- Polyglyceryl isostearates, 548
- Polyglyceryl-2 dioleate, 381
- Polyglyceryl-3 diisostearate
  - in emulsions, 229
  - in eyeshadows, 570, 571
  - in foundation makeups, 540
- Polyglyceryl-4 makeup, 537
- Polymeric ethers, 608
- Polymeric residue cleaning by shampoo, 617–619
- Polymerized vegetable oil, in lipsticks, 548
- Polymers, 118, 119
  - in emulsions, 222, 225, 226
  - in hair setting/styling products, 637, 638–639, 657, 658
  - as humectant, 363
  - in masks, 477
  - in nail polishes, 575, 582
  - for packaging (*see* Packaging)
  - as preservative, 294, 294 (*t*)
  - as rheological additive, 243, 245
  - in shaving preparations, 506
  - in skin care, 381
- Polymethoxy bicyclic oxazolidine, 286, 287
- Polymethylmethacrylate, 529, 541, 542
- Polymorphous light eruption, 35
- Polyols
  - in hair setting/styling products, 639
  - humectants as, 363, 365
- Polyorganosiloxane, in shaving preparations, 505
- Polyoxyethylene ethers, 220
- Polyoxyethylene derivatives in emulsions, 232
- Polyoxyethylene esters in emulsions, 220
- Polyoxyethylene octyl, 292
- Polyoxyethylene sorbitan monolaurate, in skin care, 374
- Polyphosphates, 624
- Polyphosphoric acid in surfactants, 200
- Polypropylene packaging, 879
- Polyquaternium-2
  - in hair straighteners, 712
- Polyquaternium-4
  - in hair setting/styling products, 645
- Polyquaternium-6
  - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-7
  - in acne products, 464
  - in shaving preparations, 506
  - in skin cleansers, 497
  - in shampoos, 618, 628
- Polyquaternium-10
  - in dandruff products, 410
  - in shampoos, 618, 628, 629
  - in shaving preparations, 506, 507
  - in skin cleansers, 498, 499
- Polyquaternium-11
  - in hair setting/styling products, 638, 645, 647
  - in nail strengtheners, 595
  - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-16
  - in skin cleansers, 496
  - in shampoos, 618
- Polyquaternium-22, 706
- Polyquaternium-24
  - in shaving preparations, 506

- Polyquaternium-28  
   in hair setting/styling products, 643, 646
- Polyquaternium-30  
   in dandruff products, 410
- Polyquaternium-39  
   in shaving preparations, 506
- Polysaccharides, microbial  
   growth in, 281
- Polysorbate 20  
   in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645, 646  
   in hair straighteners, 712  
   in shampoos, 608
- Polysorbate 21, 219
- Polysorbate 40, 219
- Polysorbate 60, 372, 373, 374, 383
- Polysorbate 61, 219
- Polysorbate 65, 219
- Polysorbate 80  
   as emulsifier, 219  
   in foundation makeups, 533, 534  
   in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645  
   in mouthwashes, 750  
   as preservative, 291  
   in shaving preparations, 504  
   in skin care, 376
- Polysorbates  
   in emulsions, 232  
   in mouthwashes, 748
- Polystyrene packaging, 879–880
- Polyunsaturated fatty acids, 329
- Polyurethane  
   in eyeliners, 569  
   in foundation makeups, 529, 542
- Polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) in  
   masks, 480
- Polyvinyl chloride packaging,  
   880
- Polyvinyl methyl ether, 619
- Polyvinylidene copolymer, 529,  
   542
- Polyvinylpyrrolidone, 481, 619
- Pomades, 636, 651–652, 664
- Porphyrias, 35
- Porphyrins  
   antioxidants and, 250  
   ultraviolet (UV) radiation and,  
   24
- Porphyromonas gingivalis* as  
   agent of periodontitis, 101
- Portable mixers, 806, **806**
- Postfoaming gel/mousse,  
   653–655, 656
- Postfoaming shave gels,  
   509–510
- Postpartum alopecia, 43, 44
- Posterior chamber of eyes, **80**
- Potassium  
   in nail strengtheners, 594  
   as natural moisturizing factor  
   (NMF), 267  
   in saliva, 91  
   in shampoos, 606
- Potassium acesulfame  
   in mouthwashes, 747  
   in toothpastes, 734
- Potassium alum, in nail  
   strengtheners, 594
- Potassium bromates, in  
   permanent waves, 704
- Potassium carbonate, in  
   permanent waves, 700
- Potassium cetyl phosphate  
   in eyeliners, 569  
   in foundation makeups, 534
- Potassium hydroxide  
   in cuticle removers, 589, 591  
   in depilatories, 721  
   in foundation makeups, 534  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
   in skin care, 373, 375, 379,  
   380
- Potassium oleate, 219
- Potassium salts, in shaving  
   preparations, 510
- Potassium sorbate in toothpastes,  
   734
- Potassium stearate, 505
- Potassium sulfate, 700
- Potassium sulfite, 700
- Pourable sculpting gel, 646
- Povidone-iodine, in  
   over-the-counter remedies,  
   404
- Powder foundations, 538–541
- Powders, 120, 131  
   after-shave powders, 520  
   bulk storage of, 871  
   deagglomeration of, 827  
   dry continuous processing,  
   870–873
- filling, 861  
   hopper flow, 871–872, **872**  
   mixing, 860–861  
   particle size, 852–853 (*t*)  
   preelectric shave powder, 514,  
   515  
   pressed, 861  
   scale-up for powders,  
   863–865  
   suspension, 835
- Power consumption of mixers,  
   806
- PPG-3 myristyl ether, 456
- PPG-12, 640
- PPG-14 butyl ether, 452
- Pratol, 319
- Preblended ingredients in new  
   product developments, 116
- Prebrushing rinse type  
   mouthwashes, 745
- Precipitation of pigments in  
   foundation makeups, 530
- Precorneal tear layer in ocular  
   tissues and eyes, 79–80
- Preelectric shave lotions,  
   511–513
- Preelectric shave powder, 514,  
   515
- Preelectric shave talc stick or  
   powder, 514
- Preformed polyethylene glycol  
   (PEG) in surfactants, 206
- Pregnenolone acetate, 135
- Prenatal development of nails,  
   72
- Prenatal lanugo hair, 41
- Preservatives, 273–304, 378,  
   385  
   acceptance criteria for, 298  
   advantages and disadvantages  
   of classes of, 287 (*t*)  
   antimicrobials as, 273  
   bacterial growth vs.,  
   274–276, 284  
   botanicals as sources of, 307,  
   312  
   British Pharmacopoeia (BP)  
   testing of, 297, 298  
   cationic surfactants and, 292  
   chemical modification of, 278  
   *Cladosporium resinae*  
   contamination and, 276

- clinical significance of contaminations and, 283–285
- concentration vs. effectiveness of, 288–289
- Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA) testing of, 297, 298
- critical micelle concentration (CMC) and, 292
- deamination vs., 275
- decarboxylation vs., 275
- dehydration vs., 275
- dephosphorylation vs., 275
- dissociation and effectiveness of, 289–290
- effectiveness of, 288–295
- efficacy testing of, 297–298
- in emulsions, 231
- environment as source of contaminations, 277–278
- equipment as source of contaminations, 278–279
- E.U. regulation of, 151, 152, 295, 296, 299, 303
- European Pharmacopoeia (EP) testing of, 297, 298
- eye infection and, 284
- in eye makeup products, 569–571, 555–556
- flesh-eating bacteria and, 285
- in foundation makeups, 535, 536
- fungal growth vs., 274–276, 284
- global preservative systems, 298
- good manufacturing practices (GMP) and, 274, 302
- in hair colorants/dyes, 688–689
- hydrolysis vs., 275
- hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) and, 292
- interactions between ingredients and, 291–295
- International Council on Harmonization (ICH) and, 303
- irritation from, 301
- Japanese regulation of, 169, 295, 296, 299
- Klebsiella* contamination and, 283
- list of commonly used preservatives, 285, 286 (*t*)
- microbial contamination and, 273
- microbial limits in finished products, 302–303
- microbial metabolism and growth vs., 274–276
- microbial resistance to, 276
- microorganisms isolated from cosmetic preparations, 284 (*t*)
- microorganisms most frequently found in contaminated products, 283, 283 (*t*)
- microorganisms used in tests of, 297–298
- molds, 284
- nonionic surfactants and, 292
- nutrients for microbial growth, in products, 280–281
- ocular preparations and, 284
- oil to water ratio and effectiveness of preservatives, 290–291
- osmotic pressure and microbial growth, 281
- oxidation vs., 275
- oxygen tension and microbial growth, 282
- packaging and, 274, 279
- partition coefficient and effectiveness of, 290–291
- personnel as source of contaminations, 279–280
- pH levels and effectiveness of, 281, 289–290
- phosphorylation vs., 275
- polymers and, 294 (*t*)
- preservative-free products, 299
- preservation of products during use, 298–301
- Pseudomonas* contamination and, 276, 280, 281, 283, 285, 301
- ratio of total to free preservatives with surfactants, 294 (*t*)
- raw materials as source of contaminations and, 276–277
- rechallenge testing of, 298
- reduction vs., 275
- regulation of, 136–137, 295
- requirements of, 285–288
- safety of, 300–301
- selection criteria for, 295–297
- self-preserving products, 299–300
- setting/styling products, 640–641
- in shampoos, 624
- in shaving preparations, 508
- shelf life of products and, 273–274
- in skin care, 371, 373, 374, 375, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383
- soaps and, 292
- solid particles influence on, 294–295
- sources of contaminations and, 276–280
- sterilization procedures as, 278–279
- surface tension and microbial growth, 282
- surface-active agents and, 292
- surfactants and, 292, 294 (*t*)
- susceptibility of organism and effectiveness of, 291
- temperature and microbial growth, 282
- in temporary hair coloring, 675
- testing for contamination in, 279
- in toothpastes, 727, 734
- toxic shock syndrome (TSS) and, 285
- toxicity of, 300–301
- United States Pharmacopoeia (USP) testing of, 297, 298
- water activity and microbial growth, 277, 280, 281
- yeast growth vs., 274–276, 284
- Preshave lotions, 131
- Pressed powder, 861–863
- blusher, 560–562
- foundations, 538–541



- Pressure filling of aerosols, 344  
*Prevotella intermedia* as agent of gingivitis, 100  
Primary (baby) teeth, 87–88  
Printing, 884  
Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC), ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 31  
Pro-vitamins in shampoos, 601–602  
Product development, 111–128  
  aerosols, 120–121  
  “blue sky” approach to, 112  
  capsules, 120  
  competition assessment in, 113  
  compounding rules for, 123–124  
  computers and optimization of formulas, 125  
  cost of products, 115  
  creams, 117  
  defining the product, 113, 121–122  
  empirical approach to compounding, 123–124  
  flexibility of developments, 113–114  
  foams, 120  
  forms of products, 116–121  
  functionality of products, 114  
  future of, 125–126  
  gels, 119  
  “grocery list” research method, 112–113  
  ingredient selection, 122–123  
  ingredient sourcing, 122–123  
  knock-out experiments, 124–125  
  lotions, 118  
  manufacturability of products, 115  
  marketability of products, 113, 114  
  nonaerosol sprays, 120–121  
  objectives of, 111–114  
  ointments, 118  
  operational/manufacturing considerations, 115  
  optimization of formulas, 124–125  
  pastes, 118  
  philosophy of, 111–114  
  planning for, 113  
  powders, 120  
  preblended ingredients, 116  
  process of, 121–126  
  regulatory requirements of products, 115, 129–173  
  requirements of successful formulas, 114–116  
  research methods, 112–114  
  “restaurant” research method, 112–113  
  safety of products, 114–115  
  solutions, liquids in, 116  
  stability of formulas used in, 114  
  sticks, 119–120  
  suspensions, 118–119  
  tablets, 120  
  test batches for, 125  
  written product profiles, 122, 126–127  
Product information package (PIP), 159–161  
Production design considerations, 869–870  
Products of specific concerns in U.S. regulations, 134–135  
Profilometry testing, 773–774  
Progesterone, 135  
Prohibited and hazardous substances in U.S. regulation, 134  
Proline in hair, 68  
Propane propellant for aerosols, 339, 654, 660, 661, 662  
Propanediol, as auxiliary preservative, 294  
Propellants  
  for aerosol products, 339–343, 507  
  in hair setting/styling products, 638, 653  
  in hair sprays, 658–663  
Propoxylate polysiloxanes in surfactants, 207  
Propoxylated lipids, 639  
Propyl acetate, in nail polishes, 579  
Propyl gallate, in lipsticks, 551  
Propylene carbonate, in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451  
Propylene glycol, 378  
  in acne products, 465, 466, 467  
  in after-shave products, 518  
  in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 453, 454, 456  
  in cuticle removers, 589  
  in dandruff products, 410  
  in foundation makeups, 533, 536  
  in hair setting/styling products, 639, 640, 643–646, 649, 655  
  in hair straighteners, 712  
  as humectant, 269  
  as hygroscopic agent, 267  
  in masks, 477, 480, 481  
  in mouthwashes, 747  
  in nail strengtheners, 594  
  in permanent hair colors, 689  
  as preservative, 291  
  in shampoos, 623  
  in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 509  
  in skin cleansers, 497  
  in skin care, 373, 376, 380, 381, 382  
  in temporary hair coloring, 675  
  in toothpastes, 732  
Propylene glycol  
  dicaprylate/dicaprate, in foundation makeups, 533–535, 542  
Propylene glycol laurate, as emulsifier, 219  
Propylene glycol stearate as emulsifier, 219  
  in shaving preparations, 510  
Propylene oxide, in shampoos, 608  
Propylparaben  
  in eyeliners, 569  
  in eyeshadows, 570, 571  
  in foundation makeups, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541  
  in mascaras, 565, 566  
  as preservative, 286, 287, 295  
  in shampoos, 624, 629  
  in temporary hair coloring, 675

- Protease digestion and desquamation in skin, 386, **387**
- Proteins  
in dental calculus (tartar), 94  
in hair setting/styling products, 641  
in hair, 40–48, 44, 55, 61, 62, 68, 69  
microbial growth in, 280  
in nail polishes, 582  
in saliva, 91  
in skin, 3, 9, 14–15, 17, 23
- Proteoglycans in skin, 34, 82
- Proteolytic enzymes, in skin, 15
- Protocatechuic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Protofilaments in hair, 47–48
- Proximal nail fold, 71, 72, 73
- Pryogenic silica in acne products, 464
- Pseudo-plastic behavior in rheological additives, 237, **237**, 795
- Pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- Pseudomonas*  
contamination by, 280–285, 301  
infection of nails, 75, 77  
preservatives, 276  
as test of preservative efficacy, 297
- Psoralens, photosensitivity and, 35
- Psoriasis and nails, 75–77
- Puberty and hair, 41, 42–43
- Pulp of tooth, 89, **89**
- Pumice, in skin cleansers, 498
- Pump-activated spray systems, 346–347, 659  
antiperspirants and deodorants, 450–451  
sunscreens, 431
- Pumping capacity, 807, **808**
- Purpurin, 317
- PVM, 644, 647, 649, 659, 661, 664
- PVM/MA decadiene crosspolymer, 226
- PVP  
in eyeliners, 569  
in hair setting/styling products, 638, 640, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 649, 650, 652, 654, 655–658, 664, 665  
PVP/decene copolymer, 226  
PVP/VA copolymers, 638
- Pyridine, in permanent hair colors, 683
- Pyridoxin, 368
- Pyrimidine, in permanent hair colors, 683
- Pyrocatechol, 397
- Pyrrolidine sulfate, in permanent hair colors, 690
- Pyrrolidone carboxylic acid, 203, 365
- Quality, E.U. regulation of, 150
- Quasi-drugs defined by Japanese regulation of, 164–165
- Quaternaries  
in nail polishes, 582  
in surfactants, 201–202, 493–494
- Quaternary ammonium  
in after-shave products, 518  
in cuticle softeners, 591  
as preservative, 290, 293, 295, 301  
removal by shampoo, 616–617  
in shaving preparations, 506
- Quaternary carboxylates, 608
- Quaternary polymers, 622
- Quaternary salts, in hair setting/styling products, 640
- Quaternium-15  
in nail strengtheners, 595  
as preservative, 286, 287  
in shampoos, 624
- Quaternium-18 hectorite  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 451, 454  
rheological properties of, 245  
in skin care, 371, 381
- Quaternium-19  
in skin care, 382
- Quaternium-22, 640
- Quaternium-26, 640, 643
- Quaternium-52, 640, 644, 654
- Quercetin as antioxidant, 255
- Questionnaires, dermatologic assessment and, 780–781
- Quince extract, 383
- Quince seed gum, 226
- Race-related cutaneous differences in skin sensitivity, 764, 765
- Racial factors in U.S. cosmetic regulation, 129
- Radial flow, 802, **803**
- Reactive oxygen species (ROS) actions in antioxidants, 250–251, 258
- Reactors for cosmetic industry, 799–800  
continuous stirred tank reactor (CSTR), 799, 850
- Recession of gums, 101
- Rechallenge testing of preservatives, 298
- Reducing agent for cold waving process, 702–704
- Reduction step in permanent waves, 696–698
- Reduction vs. preservatives, 275
- Reflectivity of materials in foundation makeups, 524–525
- Registration of cosmetic products, Japanese regulation of, 170–171
- Registration of manufacturers, E.U. regulation of, 161
- Regression analysis, 777
- Regulatory requirements (*See* European Union regulation of cosmetics; Japanese regulation of cosmetics; United States regulation of cosmetics)
- Regulatory requirements for products, 115
- Relationship of PIT to HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Relaxers, hair, 710–711
- Remineralization of tooth, 99, 742
- Removers of hair colors, 692
- Reoxidation step in permanent waves, 698–699
- Repeat insult patch test (RIPT), 771

- Requirements of successful formula in new product developments, 114–116
- Research methods in new product developments, 112–114
- Reseda, 319
- Resin-strip type facial masks, 472
- Resins  
in hair setting/styling products, 638–639  
in nail polishes, 577
- Resistance, microbial, to preservatives, 276
- Resorcinol, 397  
in acne products, 466  
in permanent hair colors, 684, 689, 690
- Resorcinol-sulfur lotion acne products, 466
- Resorcylic acid as antioxidant, 256
- Resorption zone in hair, 40
- “Restaurant” research method in new product developments, 112–113
- Restricted substances, E.U. regulation, 151
- Rete ridges, 4
- Reticular sublayer in skin, 4
- Reticulum, 18
- Retinoic acid  
in skin care, 15, 379  
reversing photoaging of skin with, 34
- Retinol nail strengthener, 595
- Reynolds number, 792–793
- Rheological additives, 235–246, 235  
acrylic acid in, 245  
agitation and, 241–242  
Al/Mg hydroxide stearate in, 243  
alcohols as, 235  
aluminum magnesium hydroxide stearate in, 245–246  
anhydrous systems of, 243  
categories of, 243  
cellulose in, 244  
cellulosics in, 243  
clays as, 235, 240, 243, 244  
colloid mills in, 241  
copolymers in, 245  
dilatant in, 237, 237  
dispersers in, 241  
elastic properties in, 238  
emulsions in, 240  
encapsulated active ingredients in, 240  
fatty acids as, 235  
flow properties and, 235  
glycols as, 235  
gums as, 235, 243, 244  
homogenizers in, 241  
instrumentation for measurement of, 238–239  
laboratory effects of, 239–241  
lubricity and, 235  
manufacturing and, 241–242  
mineral oil, 236  
mixing and, 791  
mixing machinery and effect on, 240–242  
Newton/meters to measure, 236  
Newtonian fluids in, 236, 237, 793, 794, 795  
non-Newtonian fluids in, 236, 794  
organoclays in, 243, 245  
Pascals to measure, 236  
plastic behavior in, 236, 237  
polyethylenes in, 242, 243, 245  
polyethylene glycols (PEGs) in, 243, 244–245  
polymers in, 243, 245  
product settling and, 239  
pseudoplastic behavior in, 237, 237  
rheology definition of, 235  
salts as, 235, 245  
selection criteria for, 246  
shear rate in, 236–241  
shear stress in, 236, 240  
shear thinning effect in, 237–238, 237  
shelf life and, 235  
silicas as, 235, 243, 246  
silicon dioxide, 246  
slip and, 235  
stability and, 242–243, 892–893  
stability enhancement through, 235, 240  
surfactants as, 235  
suspension of ingredients and, 235, 240  
temperature effects on, 241  
testing of, 242–243  
thermal stability and, 235  
thickeners and, 235  
thixotropic materials in, 237–238, 237, 242–243  
trihydroxystearin in, 243, 245  
visco-elastic properties in, 238  
viscosity and, 235–239  
viscosity chart, common substances, 236 (*t*)  
water, 236  
water-based systems of, 243, 244  
waxes as, 235, 241, 242  
yield values in, 236
- Rheometry, use of, 217
- Rhodamines in nail polishes, 573
- Rice starch, 120  
as contamination source, 277
- Rice wax, 310
- Ridging (onychorrhexis) of nails, 75
- Right-handed helix in hair, 44
- Ring gel, 119, 430, 651
- Rinses, dental, 98, 104, 105, 131
- Rising or creaming in emulsions, 218, 225
- Rodenticides, 165
- Roll-back mechanism in shampoos, 611–612, 612
- Roll-on type antiperspirants and deodorants, 453–454
- Root of tooth, 89, 89
- Rose oil, 315
- Rose water, 315
- Rosemary oil, 315, 551
- Rosewood oil, 315
- Rosin mascaras, 565, 566
- Rosmarinic acid as antioxidant, 252, 253, 312
- Rotogravure printing for packaging, 885
- Roto/stator design, 821
- Rouge (*See* Blushers and rouge)
- S-S scission in hair, 67, 68

- Saccharide hydrolysate, as  
hygroscopic agent, 267
- Saccharide isomerate, as  
hygroscopic agent, 267
- Saccharides in surfactants,  
205–206
- Saccharin  
in mouthwashes, 747, 750  
in toothpastes, 734, 737
- Sachets, 131
- Safety of cosmetic products,  
755–773  
adverse skin reactions in,  
755–766  
age-related cutaneous  
differences in skin  
sensitivity and, 764  
allergic contact dermatitis in,  
758–759  
animal testing in, 768–769  
antiperspirants and  
deodorants, 441  
approach to formulation of  
skin products meeting,  
765 (*t*)  
assessment methods for,  
766–773  
contact urticaria (hives) in,  
759–770  
cumulative irritancy test in,  
771  
cutaneous reaction patterns  
and, 756 (*t*)  
Draize test in, 768  
emulsions, 223, 231–232  
E.U. regulation of, 150,  
155–156, 161  
eye irritancy testing in,  
768–769, 771  
guinea pig maximization  
testing in, 769  
hair colorants/dyes, 670–671  
human testing procedures in,  
769–773  
human variability in skin  
sensitivity and, 763–765  
in vitro testing in, 767–768  
irritant contact dermatitis and,  
756–758, 757 (*t*)  
mandatory requirement of  
safety in, 765–766  
mechanisms of skin sensitivity  
and, 761–763
- mouthwashes, 752  
nail polish, 574  
new product development,  
114–115  
noxious sensory stimuli  
testing in, 772  
OTC drugs, 144  
patch testing in, 769–770  
photopatch testing in,  
770–771  
phototoxic dermatitis in,  
760–761  
polish, 578  
preservatives, 300–301  
race-related cutaneous  
differences in skin  
sensitivity and, 764, 765  
repeat insult patch tests  
(RIPT) in, 771  
shampoo, 633  
soap chamber test in, 771  
sting testing in, 772–773  
stinging and, products that  
induce, 762 (*t*)  
sunscreens, 427  
surfactant use, 208–209  
toothpastes, 740  
U.S. regulation and, 129, 130,  
134
- Safflower, 318
- Saffron, 318
- Sage oil, 315, 320
- Sale of cosmetics in E.U.,  
147–148
- Salicylic acid  
in acne products, 466  
in dandruff products, 408,  
409, 411  
in foundation makeups, 536  
as preservative, 286, 287, 295
- Saliva and oral care, 89, 93, 97,  
98
- Salts as rheological additive,  
235, 245
- Sandalwood, 315, 319
- Sanguinaria extract, 737, 748
- Sanitary products, 165
- Santalol, 319
- Sarcosinates in surfactants, 197
- Scale-up, 846–852  
for continuous systems, 869  
for powders, 863–865
- Scientific Committee for  
Cosmetic and Non-Food  
Products (SCCNFP),  
151–156
- Scrubbing cleanser, 498, 471,  
476 (*t*)
- Sculpting lotions, 643–646
- Sebaceous gland and hair, 4, 8,  
12–13, 40, 48, 80, 438  
acne and, 460
- Sebocytes in skin, 4
- Sebum assessment testing, 776
- Sebum of skin, 13, 460,  
614–616
- Secondary (adult) teeth, 88
- Secret ingredients, U.S.  
regulation of, 139
- Segregation of particles, 790
- Segregative mixing, 788
- Selenium sulfide, in dandruff  
products, 408, 409, 411
- Self-heating hair straightener,  
713
- Self-preserving products,  
299–300
- Semipermanent hair coloring,  
670, 676–682
- Sensitive teeth, 101–102, 736
- Sepro can spray systems,  
345–346
- Sequestrants in shampoos,  
623–624
- Sericate  
in blushers, 561  
in foundation makeups, 528,  
540, 542
- Sesame oil, 371
- Setting lotion, 643
- Settling in rheological additives,  
239
- SH-group in stress relaxation  
hair, 55–56
- Shampoos, 131, 165, 195,  
601–634  
acyl isethionates, 605  
additives to, 601–602  
alkyl ether sulfates in,  
602–604  
alkyl sulfates in, 602–604  
alkyl-substituted amino acids  
in, 609  
alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS)  
in, 604

- Shampoos (*cont.*)
- amine oxides, 607
  - amphoteric surfactants in, 608–609
  - anionic surfactants in, 602–606
  - antidandruff shampoos, 630
  - antioxidants in, 623–624
  - baby (tearless) shampoos, 608, 625, 626
  - benefits of, 624–625
  - betaines in, 608–609
  - body of hair, 632
  - cationic conditioning polymers and, 618
  - cationic surfactants in, 609
  - for chemically treated hair, 617, 621–622
  - clarifying agents in, 623
  - cleaning (basic) shampoo formula, 625
  - combing damage to hair after, **621**
  - combing ease after, 631
  - conditioners for, 601–602, 606, 616–618, 626–630,
  - conditioning shampoos, 626–630
  - critical micelle concentration (CMC) in, 603, 612–613
  - cuticle erosion by, 620
  - dimethicone residue cleaning by, 619
  - direct damage by, 620
  - ease of applications of, 630
  - effects on hair by, 620–622
  - efficacy of soil removals by, 614–620
  - emulsification formation in, 613–614
  - emulsions in, 602
  - evaluation of, 630–633
  - fatty alkanolamides in, 606–607
  - fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates, 606
  - fixative residue cleaning by, 619
  - foaming (lather)
    - characteristics, 601, 603, 613–614, 630–631
  - fragrance in, 624
  - herbal extracts in, 601–602
  - indirect damage by, 620
  - irritation from, 601
  - lather (*See* Foaming characteristics)
  - linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS), 605
  - luster of hair, 631, 632
  - manageability of hair and, 632
  - marine extracts in, 602
  - mechanisms of hair cleaning, 609–614, **612**
  - mesophase formation in, 613–614
  - miceller activity in, 603
  - mild (baby) shampoos, 625, 626
  - mixed soil cleaning by, 619–620
  - monoglyceride sulfate, 606
  - N-acyl methyltaurates (AMT), 605
  - N-acyl sarcosinates, 605
  - negative charges of hair and cleaning with, 609–610
  - nonsilicone conditioning agents for, 628–630
  - nonionic surfactants in, 606–608
  - oily soil removal by, 611–614
  - opacifying agents in, 623
  - pearlescent conditioning shampoo, 628
  - penetration of, 613–614
  - pH of, 609, 623
  - polyalkoxylated ether glycolates, 606
  - polymeric residue cleaning by, 617–619
  - preservatives in, 624
  - pro-vitamins in, 601–602
  - quaternary ammonium compound cleaning by, 616–617
  - reduced-damage shampoo, 622, 622 (*t*)
  - rheological properties of, 236, 244
  - rinsing characteristics, 601, 631
  - roll-back mechanism in, 611–612, **612**
  - safety, 633
  - sebum cleaning by, 614–616
  - sequestrants in, 623–624
  - shine of hair, 631, 632
  - silicone conditions for two-in-one shampoos, 626–628
  - soaps in, 602
  - sodium lauryl sulphate (SLS), 616
  - sodium lauryl-2 sulfate (SLES), 616
  - softness of hair and, 631
  - solid particulate cleaning by, 610–611
  - solubilization of soils by, 612–613
  - split ends and, **621**
  - stability of, 632–633
  - static reducing shampoo, 629
  - sulfosuccinates in, 605
  - surfactants in, 602–609
  - thickeners for, 623
  - two-in-one (shampoo/conditioner) products, 601, 602, 626–628
  - UV absorbers in, 623–624
  - van der Waals forces in, 617
  - viscosity of, 601, 609, 622–623
  - vitamins in, 601–602
  - Shaping spray, 653
  - Shark liver oil in
    - over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
  - Shaving creams, 120, 131, 165, 502–504
  - Shaving foams, 505–509
  - Shaving gels, 119
  - Shaving preparations, 120, 131, 165, 501–521
    - aeorsol shaving foams, 505–509
    - after-shave balms, 517–520
    - after-shave gels, 517
    - after-shave lotion, 515–516
    - after-shave powders, 520
    - alcohol in after-shaves, 515–516
    - alkali content in, 503
    - antioxidants in, 507
    - beard softening characteristics in, 501–502
    - “bloomng” gels, 509–510

- brushless shave creams, 510–511
- colorants in after-shaves, 516
- conditioning agents in, 506–507, 511, 528
- corrosion inhibitors in aerosols, 508
- dry shaving preparations, 511–513
- electric shavers, preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
- emollients in, 503, 505
- emulsions in, 506, 510
- evaluation of aerosol foam shaves, 508–509
- facial depilatories for African-American men, 720
- fatty acids in, 502–503, 506, 510
- foaming characteristic of, 508
- foaming shave products, 502–504
- fragrance in, 507
- free fatty acid (FFA) content of, 503
- gums in, 505, 518
- humectants in, 503, 506, 511, 518
- internal can pressure for aerosols, 508
- lathering shaving cream, 502–504
- lathering shaving sticks, 504
- lipids in, 503–506, 509–511
- lubricant characteristics of, 501–502, 506–507
- moisturizers in, 504
- oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions, 505
- oils in, 503
- pearlizing agents in, 504, 510
- play time of after-shave balms, 517–520
- postfoaming shave gels, 509–510
- preelectric shave gel stick, 514
- preelectric shave lotions, 511–513
- preelectric shave powder, 514, 515
- preservatives in, 508
- propellants in aerosol, 507
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- rheological additives for, 244
- sensorial (cooling) products in, 504
- shaving cream, 502–504
- shaving sticks, 504
- soaps in, 505
- soothing agents in after-shaves, 516
- spray rates for aerosols, 508
- stability of, 502
- surfactants in, 503–504, 506, 511
- TEA soaps, 503
- thickeners in, 505, 514
- two-phase after-shave lotions, 516
- volatile organic compounds (VOC) in aerosols, 507, 510, 515
- Shaving soaps, 131
- Shaving sticks, 504
- Shea butter, 309, 664
- Shear rate, 236, 239, 241, **793**, 794, **795**
- Shear stress, 236, 240, 793
- Shear thinning effect in rheological additive, 237–238, **237**
- Shearing equipment, 857–859
- Shedding of nails (onychomadesis), 75
- Shelf life, 235, 273–274, 889, 890
- Shikonin, 319
- Shine enhancers, 636
- Shine of hair, 58–59
- Shower gel, 119, 497, 499
- Silica  
as additive, 246  
in eyeshadows, 571  
in foundation makeups, 529, 530, 540  
in hair straighteners, 712  
as rheological additive, 235, 243
- Silicates, 120
- Silicon dioxide, 246
- Silicone emulsion, 824
- Silicones, 119  
in after-shave products, 517
- in antiperspirants and deodorants, 450  
as lipid, 323  
in lipsticks, 550  
in makeup, 535, 542  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
in setting/styling products, 639, 642, 648  
in shampoos, 626–628  
in shaving preparations, 505, 506
- Single-phase (miscible) systems, 801–802
- Singlet oxygen, photosensitivity and, 35, 249–250
- Sjögren's syndrome in oral care, 105
- Skin, 3–38  
absorption of water by, 262  
acne (*See* Acne products)  
actinic keratosis and, 33  
action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, **25**  
adverse reactions to cosmetics in, 755–766  
age vs. dryness in, 262  
age-related cutaneous differences in, 764  
aging, chronologic, of, 20–22, 21 (*t*)  
allergic contact dermatitis in, 758–759  
apocrine sweat glands in, 12, 18, 438–439  
appendageal structures of, 11–13  
aromatherapy and, 389  
atrophy of, 33, 34  
barrier function of, 9, 16–17, 351, 354–357, **355**, 367  
basal cell carcinoma, 28  
basal lamina in, 5  
basal layer of epidermis in, 4  
basement membrane in, 387, 388  
blood flow testing in, 776  
blood vessel of, 4, 17, 18, 19, 22, 352  
burns to, 20  
calcium in, 356  
callus in, 20, 261  
capacitance testing in, 774–775

- Skin (cont.)**  
 capillary in, 4  
 carcinomas, 28  
 cementosomes of (*See* Odland bodies)  
 ceramides in, 6, 9, 16  
 cholesterol in, 13, 16, 353  
 chromophores in, 23  
 chronologic aging of, 20–22, 21 (*t*), 263  
 coarseness of, 22, 33, 34  
 collagen in, 3, 15, 18, 22, 34, 387–388  
 collagenase in, 15  
 colorimetry testing in, 775  
 conductance of, after lipid application, 328, 328 (*t*)  
 connective tissue in, 4  
 contact urticaria (hives) in, 759–770  
 copper in collagen synthesis in, 18  
 cumulative irritancy test in, 771  
 cutaneous malignant melanoma and, 33  
 cutaneous reaction patterns and, 756 (*t*)  
 cytokeratins in, 7  
 cytokines in, 3, 10, 14–15, 357  
 damage to, 19–20  
 delipidization of, 353–354  
 dendritic pigment-synthesizing cells in, 4  
 dermal fibrils in, 5  
 dermal-epidermal interactions in, 387–388  
 dermis of, 3, 4, 17–19, 351  
 dermo-epidermal junction in, 4–5  
 desmosomes in, 5  
 desquamating layer of, 10  
 desquamation of, 10, 386, 387  
 dielectric water content (DEWC), 763  
 dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA) in, 11  
 diseases of, 17, 35  
 Draize test in, 768  
 dry skin, 263–264, 270  
 eccrine sweat glands in, 11–12, 18, 438–439  
 efficacy testing of skin moisturizers, 269  
 elasticity testing in, 774  
 elastin in, 15, 18, 34  
 environmental factors in moisture content of, 268–269  
 enzymes in, 15, 386  
 epidermal rete ridges in, 4  
 epidermis in, 3–7, 4, 351, 352, 387  
 erythema in, 23, 25–29, 25 esterification in, 353  
 ET-1 receptors and tanning, 398  
 eumelanins of melanin in, 11  
 evaporimetry testing in, 775  
 fatty acids in, 16, 353  
 fibroblasts in, 17, 387, 388  
 fibronectin in, 34  
 filaggrin in, 8  
 freckles in, 33, 34  
 free fatty acids in, 6, 13  
 frostbite and, 20  
 functions of, 14–17, 389  
 functions of, decline with age, 21, 22 (*t*)  
 glycocalyx of, 5  
 glycolipids in, 353  
 glycoproteins in, 5  
 glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) in, 3, 17, 18, 22  
 granular cells in, 16  
 granular layer of epidermis in, 4  
 ground substance of, 3, 18  
 hair follicle in, 4, 13–14, 18, 39, 41, 352, 438  
 healing process and moisture in, 265–266  
 hormonal influences on, 388  
 horny layer (stratum corneum) of epidermis in, 4, 351  
 human variability in sensitivity of, 763–765  
 humectants and, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 363–367  
 hydration of, 352  
 hydrolysis in, 353  
 hydrolytic enzymes in, 16  
 hydrophilic polymers in skin moisturizers, 268  
 hygroscopic agents for skin moisturization and, 266, 267 (*t*)  
 hyperkeratotic lesions and, 33  
 immunosuppression and, 32  
 impedance (conductance) testing in, 774  
 insensible perspiration of (*See* Transepidermal water loss)  
 interleukin (IL) and tanning, 398  
 ionizing radiation damage and, 20  
 irritant contact dermatitis and, 756–758, 757 (*t*)  
 keratin in, 3–10 365  
 keratinizing system, 4–7  
 keratinocytes in, 3–10, 8, 14–15, 29–31, 262, 386  
 keratinosomes (Odland bodies) in, 5–6, 16, 324, 367  
 lamellar body secretion by, 268  
 lamina lucida in, 5  
 Langerhans cells in, 4, 11, 20, 357  
 laxity of, 22, 33, 34  
 layers of, 3–4, 4  
 lentigo maligna, 28  
 lipid penetration of, 326  
 lipids treatment of, 325–326, 354–356, 355, 364–365  
 lipids in, 3–16, 7 (*t*), 264, 268, 323–324, 351–352, 353–354, 460, 461  
 lipocytes in, 4  
 lorincrin in, 9  
 lymphatic vessels of, 19, 352  
 lysosomes in, 15  
 malignancies of, 20, 28, 32–33  
 malpighian (prickle) layer of epidermis in, 4, 5  
 mast cells in, 15, 17  
 mechanisms of sensitivity in, 761–763  
 Meissner corpuscles in, 19  
 melanin in, 10, 29–31, 35–36  
 melanocytes in, 4, 10–11  
 melanomas and, 28, 33

- melanosomes in, 10–11, 29–31
- Merkel cells in, 4
- mesenchymal cells in, 387
- minimum erythral dose (MED) of, 26
- moisture content of, 9, 9, 16–17, 261–263, 351–352, 357–358, 365–366, **366**, 385–386
- moisturizers for, 261–270
- morphology of, 3–4, 4
- mucocutaneous end organs in, 19
- muscles of, 19
- nails, 14
- natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 266–268, 358, 365, 385
- neomelanogenesis in, 25
- neoplasms in, 21, 22, 33, 34
- nerves in, 18–19
- neurocutaneous skin biology, 388–389
- nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC) and, 33
- noxious sensory stimuli testing in, 772
- nutritional effects on, 388
- occlusion of, 357
- occlusive agents in moisturizers for, 264–266, 265 (*t*)
- Oland bodies in, 5–6, 16, 324, 367
- oils in, 367, 462–465
- oily skin (*See* Acne products)
- optical characteristics, 23
- papillary sublayer of, 3–4
- patch testing in, 769–770
- penetration of light into skin, 24
- penetration rate of, by skin care products, 353–354
- permeability of, 16–17, 22
- perspiration of (antiperspirants and deodorants), 438–441
- pH levels and, 356–357
- pheomelanins in, 10–11
- photoaging, 22, 28, 33–34, 263
- photoallergic dermatitis in, 760–761
- photocarcinogenesis and, 26, 32–33
- photodamage, 28
- photodermatoses and, 28, 35
- photopatch testing in, 770–771
- photosensitivity and, 28, 35
- phototoxic dermatitis in, 760–761
- pigmentary system of, 10–11, 29–31, 35–36
- pili arrector muscles of, 19
- plant extracts beneficial to, 319–320
- profilometry testing in, 773–774
- protease digestion and desquamation in, 386, **387**
- protective mechanisms in, 35–36, 35
- proteins in, 3, 9, 14–17, 23
- proteoglycans in, 34, 82
- pseudofolliculitis barbae (PFB) conditions, 507
- race-related cutaneous differences in, 764, 765
- repeat insult patch tests (RIPT) in, 771
- reticular sublayer in, 4
- reticulin in, 18
- reversal of photoaging to, 34
- sebaceous gland in, 4, 8, 12–13, 352, 438, 460
- sebocytes in, 4
- sebum assessment testing in, 776
- sebum produced by, 13, 460, 614–616
- skin types, 31, 32
- soap chamber test in, 771
- sodium in, 356
- softening of, 366
- solar keratoses, 28
- solar lentiginos (age spots/liver spots) in, 22, 33, 34
- sphingolipids in, 353
- squalene in, 13
- squametry testing in, 774
- squamous cell carcinoma, 28
- sterols in, 6, 353
- sting testing in, 772–773
- stinging and, products that induce, 762 (*t*)
- stratum basale in, 5
- stratum corenum of, 6–7, 9, 19, 262, 323–324, 351, 352, 367
- stratum corneum disjunction/conjunction in, 10
- stratum germinativum of, 4, 5–9, 262
- stratum lucidum in, 6
- stratum spinosum in, 5–6, 4
- structures and function, 3–38
- subcutaneous tissue of, 3, 4, 351
- subcutis or hypodermis layer of, 4
- sunburn and, 20, 23, 28–29
- sunlight and (*See* Ultraviolet radiation and)
- sunscreens and, 32
- sweat composition of, 438–439
- sweat gland in, 4, 11–12, 352
- tanning in, 23, 29–31, 35–36, 397–398, 415
- telangiectasias of, 22, 33, 34
- temperature vs. moisture absorption by, 352–353
- terminal differentiation in, 7–10
- thermal burns, 30
- thickness testing in, 775
- topical or cutaneous drug absorption through, 17, 22, 352, 354, 368
- transepidermal water loss (TEWL), 262–264, 266, 268, 324, 325, 367, 374, 763, 775
- transglutaminase in, 9
- triglycerides in, 13
- types of, and genetic response to UV, 31–32
- ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 11, 12, 15, 20–36, 378
- urocanic acid in, 36
- UVB-induced pigmentation mechanism in, 397–398
- vasculature of, 19, 22
- Vater-Pacini corpuscles in, 19



- Skin (*cont.*)
- vitamin C in collagen
    - synthesis in, 18
  - vitamins and, 388
  - vitamins applied topically to, 368
  - water absorption by, 352
  - water level in, 9
  - water loss in, 9, 10, 16, 17, 261–263, 351–352
  - wax esters in, 13
  - wrinkles in, 21–22, 33, 34, 262, 377–379
- Skin antiseptics, 403–407
- Skin care products, 351–413
- acne products (*See* Acne products)
  - active ingredients in, 362, 402, 406
  - all-purpose creams, 360
  - amino acids in, 365
  - t*-4-aminomethyl-cyclohexanecarboxylic acid (*t*-AMCHA) in, 386
  - anhydrous oily types, 361
  - antidandruff shampoos and lotions, 408–412, 630
  - antimicrobials in, 362, 368
  - antioxidants in, 362
  - antiseptic hand washes, 405
  - antiseptics for the skin, 403–407
  - antiwrinkle creams, 377–379
  - aromatherapy and, 389
  - astringents, 142, 412, 465
  - barrier function of skin vs., 354–356, 355, 357, 367
  - bleaches, 394–398
  - body creams, 382
  - botanical extracts in, 368
  - buffers in, 362
  - calcium concentrations in, 356
  - callus removers, 412–413
  - categories of, by function, 359–360, 360 (*t*)
  - chelating agents in, 362, 375, 383
  - cleansers (*See* Skin cleansers)
  - cleansing creams, 360
  - cold creams, 360, 370
  - cold sore treatments, 401–403
  - colorants in, 362
  - components of, 361–363, 362 (*t*)
  - corn removers, 412–413
  - cream type products, 358–361
  - dandruff lotions (*See* Antidandruff shampoos and lotions)
  - delipidization in, 353–354
  - dermal-epidermal interactions in skin and, 387–388
  - emollient creams, 379–382
  - emulsions in, 358, 359
  - environmental factors in moisture content of skin, 363–364, 364, 365
  - enzymatic homeostasis theory in, 386
  - eye creams, 378
  - fatty acids in, 368–369
  - fever blister treatments, 401–403
  - formulation of, 361 (*t*)
  - foundation creams, 360
  - fragrance in, 362
  - functions, 14
  - future developments in, 384–385
  - hand and body protectants, 360
  - hand creams, 382
  - hormonal influences on skin and, 388
  - humectants/moisturizers in, 363–367
  - hydration of skin from use of, 352
  - ions and pH levels in, 356–357
  - irritation caused by, 366–367
  - lip balms, 401–403
  - lipids in, 310, 318, 354–356, 355, 362, 364–365, 370–372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 380, 381, 382, 384
  - lotions, 358, 359, 360
  - marketing of, 359
  - massage creams, 360, 374, 376
  - microemulsion lotion, 383
  - milks, 360
  - miscellaneous ingredients in, 368
  - moisture balance in, 357–358, 365–366, 366, 385–386
  - moisturizers in, 131, 188, 261–272, 266–268, 267 (*t*), 268 (*t*), 361–367, 383 (*t*), 364, 365, 372, 374, 379, 381, 383, 384
  - multiple emulsions, 382, 384, 385
  - natural moisturizing factor (NMF) and, 358, 365, 385
  - neurocutaneous skin biology in, 388–389
  - night creams, 360, 374, 376
  - nutritive creams, 376
  - occlusion of skin by, 357
  - oil phase components of, 362
  - oil-in-water (O/W) emulsions in, 361, 370, 371, 376, 380
  - oils in, 362, 367, 370, 371
  - over-the-counter drug type products, 393–413
  - packaging for, 358, 359
  - patient preoperative skin antiseptics, 405, 406–407
  - penetration rate by, 353–354
  - perfumes (*See* Fragrance), 362
  - pH levels in, 356–357, 362
  - phase inversion in cleansing products, 371
  - preservatives in, 362
  - raw materials in, 362
  - safety of, 765 (*t*)
  - skin cleansing products, 369–374
  - skin protectant products, 401–403
  - soaps, 398–401
  - sodium concentrations in, 356
  - softening lotions, 360, 366, 383
  - solubility of, 354
  - stability of, 359, 381–382
  - stabilizers in, 362
  - surfactants in, 362
  - surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407
  - temperature vs. hydration in, 352–353
  - thickeners in, 362
  - topical or cutaneous drug absorption through, 352, 354, 368

- transepidermal water loss (TEWL) ratios in skin, 367, 374
- two-way type cleansing creams, 372–374
- types of, 358–361
- vanishing creams, 360, 379–382
- viscosity of, 359, 381
- vitamins and, 368, 388
- wart removers, 412–413
- wash-off cleansing creams, 372–374
- water phase components of, 362
- water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions in, 361, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380
- waxes in, 370, 371
- wipe-off skin cleansing creams, 370–372
- Skin cleansers, 369–374, 485–500
- alkylamido alkylamines in, 493
- alkylated amino acids in, 493
- alkyl glucosides in, 494
- alkyl sulfates in, 488
- amine oxides in, 494
- amphoteric surfactants in, 493
- anionic surfactants in, 490–493
- antimicrobials in, 403–407, 495, 496
- attributes of successful formulations, 490
- betaines in, 494
- body shampoo, 497, 498
- bubble bath, 496
- chloroxylenol in, 496
- cleansing and moisturizing liquid, 499
- efficacy of, 495–496
- fatty acids in, 486
- foam or bubble bath, 496
- foaming action of, 490, 495
- formulation of, 489–490
- functionality of, 489 (*t*)
- glycerin in, 487, 498, 499
- hexachlorophene in, 495
- irritants in, 486–487, 488–489
- isethionates in, 493
- mildness, test for, 488–489
- moisturizing cleansing gel, 498
- nonionic surfactants in, 494
- pH levels of, 486
- phenol in, 495
- phosphates in, 493
- poloxamers in, 494
- prototype formulations for, 496–500
- quaternary surfactants in, 493–494
- rinsing ease in, 490, 495
- scrubbing cleanser, 498
- shower gel, 497, 499
- skin conditioning cleansing bar, 497
- soaps, 485–486, 492
- sulfates in, 492
- sulfonates in, 492–493
- superfatted soaps in, 487
- surfactants and, 486, 487
- synthetic surfactants in, 487–489
- towelette cleaners, 500
- triclocarban in, 496
- triclosan in, 496
- types of, 489–490
- water content of, 490
- Skin conditioning cleansing bar, 497
- Skin fresheners, 131, 1
- Skin protectant products, 143, 401–403
- Skin treatment products, 166
- Slip and rheological additive, 235
- Smectite (clay) in masks, 472, 473, 475–476 in nail polishes, 583
- Smudgeproof mascara, 564, 565
- Soap chamber test, 771
- Soaps, 330, 398–401, 485–486, 492
- acidification in, 401
- alkali in, 401
- as anionic surfactant, 491
- bar type, manufacture of, 401
- cosmetic use of, 399–400
- emulsions, 218, 227
- fatty acids in, 401, 486
- Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulation of, 398–401
- in foundation makeups, 524, 530, 533, 538
- glycerin in, 487
- household use of, 399
- as humectant, 270
- irritants in, 486–487
- liquid soaps, 400
- manufacture of, 401
- in mascaras, 565, 566
- medicated, 165
- oily skin treatements, 463–464
- pH levels of, 486
- preservatives, 292
- regulation of, 131, 144, 164, 398–401
- in shampoos, 602
- in shaving preparations, 505, 510
- in skin cleansers, 492
- in skin care, 370
- soap chamber test in, 771
- in solid dentifrice, 739
- superfatted (free fatty acid) soaps, 487
- as surfactant, 188, 198, 486, 487
- Sodium
- as natural moisturizing factor (NMF), 267
- in saliva, 91
- in skin care products, 356
- in nail strengtheners, 594
- Sodium alginate, 372
- Sodium benzoate, 749
- in mouthwashes, 749, 750, 751
- as preservative, 286, 287
- in shampoos, 622
- in skin cleansers, 497
- in toothpastes, 734
- Sodium bicarbonate, 730, 750
- Sodium bisulfite, 286, 287
- Sodium borate
- as preservative, 286, 287
- in skin care, 370, 371, 372
- Sodium bromate, 704, 706
- Sodium C14-16 olefin sulfonate, 497
- Sodium carbomer, 499

- Sodium carbonate, 713
- Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose  
in masks, 481  
in toothpastes, 732–733
- Sodium chloride, 701  
in after-shave products, 516  
in denture cleansers, 744  
in foundation makeups, 536, 537  
in shampoos, 623  
in skin cleansers, 496, 497
- Sodium cocoglycerylether sulfonate, 499
- Sodium cocoyl glutamate, 455
- Sodium cocoyl isethionate, 374, 499
- Sodium cumene sulfonate, 629
- Sodium deceth-2 sulfate (SDES), 617
- Sodium dehydroacetate, 286, 287
- Sodium fluoride (*See* Fluoride)
- Sodium glutamate, in skin care, 381
- Sodium hyaluronate, as humectant, 364
- Sodium hydroxide  
in dandruff products, 410  
in depilatories, 721  
in hair setting/styling products, 649  
in hair straighteners, 709  
in shaving preparations, 505  
in temporary hair coloring, 675
- Sodium hydroxymethylglycinate, 286, 287, 706
- Sodium lactate  
as humectant, 363  
in skin cleansers, 497
- Sodium laureth sulfate  
in dandruff products, 410  
in shampoos, 622, 629  
in shaving preparations, 504  
in skin cleansers, 496, 498, 499  
in skin care, 374
- Sodium lauroamphoacetate, 498, 525, 628
- Sodium lauroyl sarcosinate, 465, 499, 731
- Sodium lauroylalaninate, 622
- Sodium lauryl sulfate (SLS), 603, 705, 706  
comedogenicity of, 463  
in dandruff products, 410  
in depilatories, 719, 720  
as emulsifier, 219, 228  
in mouthwashes, 751  
in permanent hair colors, 689  
in shampoos, 604, 616, 618  
in toothpastes, 730–731, 737
- Sodium magnesium silicate, 733
- Sodium metaphosphate, 730
- Sodium methyl cocoyl taurate  
in skin care, 375  
in toothpastes, 731
- Sodium methylparaben, 508
- Sodium monofluorophosphate toothpaste, 736, 737
- Sodium nitrite, 134
- Sodium oleate, as emulsifier, 219
- Sodium PCA  
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 645  
skin/in skin cleansers, 497
- Sodium perborate  
in denture cleansers, 744  
in nail bleaches, 592  
in permanent waves, 704
- Sodium percarbonate  
in denture cleansers, 744  
in permanent waves, 704
- Sodium phosphate, 749
- Sodium pyrrolidone carboxylate, as humectant, 363, 365
- Sodium saccharin (*See* Saccharin)
- Sodium silicate  
in denture cleansers, 744  
in depilatories, 719  
in toothpastes, 734–735
- Sodium stearate, 119  
in antiperspirants/deodorants, 456  
in skin cleansers, 497  
in surfactants, 198
- Sodium sulfate  
in cuticle removers, 589  
in shampoos, 622  
in skin cleansers, 499
- Sodium sulfite  
in permanent hair colors, 689, 690  
as preservative, 286, 287
- Sodium trideceth sulfate, 626
- Soft extracts of botanicals, 307
- Soft solid type antiperspirants and deodorants, 454–455
- Soft tissues of mouth, 92
- Softening lotions, 360, 383
- Solar keratoses, 28
- Solar lentigos (age spots/liverspots) skin, 22, 33, 34
- Solid dentifrice, 739
- Solid/stick type antiperspirants and deodorants, 451–453
- Solid–liquid interface and action of surfactants, 193–194
- Solids in emulsions, 225
- Solid suspension in liquids, 826–830
- Solubility parameter for sunscreens, 419
- Solubility parameter vs. HLB values in emulsions, 221
- Solubility vs. partition coefficient in emulsions, 220
- Solubilization of soils by shampoo, 612–613
- Solubilization, 897–898  
in hair setting/styling products, 641, 655, 660, 661  
in mouthwashes, 747
- Solvents  
in emulsions, 211, 218–219  
in hair setting/styling products, 637–638  
in mouthwashes, 746  
in nail polishes, 577–579
- Sorbic acid, as preservative, 286, 287, 295, 301, 312, 536
- Sorbitan esters  
comedogenicity of, 463  
in foundation makeups, 533
- Sorbitan palmitate, 219
- Sorbitan sesquioleate  
as emulsifier, 219  
in skin care, 375
- Sorbitan stearate, 219
- Sorbitan tristearate, 219

- Sorbitans**  
 in foundation makeups, 534  
 in skin care, 372, 377  
 in surfactants, 205
- Sorbitol**, 310, 375  
 in after-shave products, 518  
 in hair setting/styling products, 664  
 as humectant, 269  
 as hygroscopic agent, 267  
 in masks, 477, 480, 481  
 microbial growth in, 280  
 in mouthwashes, 747, 751  
 in shampoos, 623  
 in shaving preparations, 503, 506, 509, 513  
 in skin cleansers, 500  
 in skin care, 383  
 in toothpastes, 731, 737
- Sores or ulcers in oral care**, 92
- Soy sterol**, 712
- Soybean oil**, 221
- Soybeans**, 311
- Spaces (interproximal) around teeth**, 90
- Spermaceti**, 372, 615
- Spermaceti wax shampoo**, 615
- Sphingolipids in skin**, 353
- Split ends in hair**, 621, 664
- Splitting in nails (onychoschizia)**, 76
- Spoon-shaped nails (koilonychia)**, 76
- Spore-forming bacteria, as contaminant**, 283
- Spray gels**, 643–646
- Spreading coefficient and surfactants**, 194
- Spritz styling sprays**, 653
- Squalene**, 13, 376–381, 385, 460, 461, 615
- Squametry testing**, 774
- Squamous cell carcinoma**, 28
- Stability**, 889–899  
 active ingredients and, 896–897  
 aerosol containers, 347  
 antioxidants, 247  
 chemical changes and, 889  
 emulsions, 211, 212, 215, 217, 218, 220, 222, 223, 224, 225–226, 226 (*t*), 229, 230–231  
 formulas used in new product developments, 114  
 foundation makeup, 535, 536  
 hair colorants/dyes, 671  
 hair spray, 662  
 masks, 477, 478  
 microbial action and, 889  
 nail polish, 574–575  
 oxidation, 898  
 particle size and, 893–894  
 predictive stability testing for emulsions, 891–896  
 rheological additive, 235, 240, 242–243, 892–893  
 shampoo, 632–633  
 in shaving preparations, 502  
 shelf life, 889, 890  
 in skin care products, 359, 362  
 solubilization, 897–898  
 storage, 889  
 temperature effects on, 890, 892, 896  
 test protocols for, 894–896, 895 (*t*)  
 testing for, 890  
 toothpaste, 726  
 transesterification, 897  
 use of centrifugation, 895  
 use of shaking, 895
- Staining dyes in lipsticks**, 545
- Staining of tooth**, 102–103
- Standard for Denatured Alcohol for Industrial Use, Japanese regulation of**, 167
- Stannites as depilatories**, 717
- Stannous fluoride toothpaste**, 736, 737
- Staphylococcus**  
 as contaminant, 283, 285  
 as test of preservative efficacy, 297  
 infection of ocular tissues and eyes, 85
- Starch**  
 in foundation makeups, 529, 538  
 as hygroscopic agent, 267  
 microbial growth in, 281
- State regulation of cosmetics in U.S.**, 146–147
- Static charge in hair**, 50, 60–61
- Static reducing shampoo**, 629
- Steam, effect on hair**, 62
- Stearalkonium bentonite**, 378
- Stearalkonium chloride**  
 in shampoos, 616–617  
 in surfactants, 201
- Stearalkonium hectorite nail polish**, 583
- Stearamine oxide shampoo**, 607
- Steareth-10, comedogenicity of**, 463
- Steareth-20**, 623, 647
- Stearic acid**  
 in acne products, 466  
 in foundation makeups, 533  
 in mascaras, 564  
 in shaving preparations, 502, 504, 505, 509, 510  
 in skin cleansers, 498  
 in skin care, 371, 372, 373, 374, 377, 379, 380, 382  
 in surfactants, 198
- Steartrimonium chloride**  
 in hair setting/styling products, 640  
 in nail strengtheners, 594
- Stearyl alcohol**  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452  
 as emulsifier, 221  
 in emulsions, 220  
 in hair straighteners, 711, 712  
 in shampoos, 623  
 in skin care, 375, 380
- Stearyl dimethyl benzyl ammonium chloride**, 591
- Stearyl heptanoate**, 509
- Stearyl octanoate**, 509
- Sterilization procedures for equipment**, 278–279
- Sterol**, 6, 330, 353, 460, 461
- Sterol esters**, 460, 461
- Stick foundations**, 543
- Stick type antiperspirants and deodorants**, 451–453
- Stick type sunscreens**, 431
- Sting testing**, 772–773
- Stinging, products that induce**, 762 (*t*)
- Stokes' law and mobility of droplets in emulsions**, 225
- Stop action cold wave lotion**, 706
- Stratum basale**, 4, 5

- Stratum corneum, 4, 6–10, 19, 262, 323–324, 351, 352, 367  
 disjunction/conjunction in skin, 10
- Stratum germinativum, 4, 5–9, 262
- Stratum granulosum, 4, 6, 9, 262
- Stratum lucidum, 6
- Stratum spinosum, 4, 5–6
- Strengtheners for nails, 582, 594–595
- Streptococcus*  
 as agent of dental caries in oral care, 98  
 as contaminant, 285
- Stress relaxation in hair, 55–56
- Stress-strain response in hair, 50–52, 50
- Stretching in hair, 51, 53
- Striations in nails (onychorrhexis), 75
- Stroma in ocular tissues and eyes, 82
- Strontium hydroxide depilatories, 719, 720, 721
- Styling creams, 649–651
- Styling gel with UV screen, 649
- Styling sticks, 652
- Subcutaneous tissue of skin, 3, 4, 351
- Subcutis or hypodermis layer of skin, 4
- Submicron emulsions, 212
- Submucosal lamina propria in ocular tissues and eye, 81
- Substance P, ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 29
- Succinates, in hair setting/styling products, 659, 662
- Sucrose, as hygroscopic agent, 267
- Sucrose behenate, 498
- Sucrose cocoate, 498, 534
- Sucrose dioleate, 219
- Sulfates, in skin cleansers, 492
- Sulfhydryls in hair, 41, 46, 49, 51, 53, 63, 66
- Sulfides  
 as depilatories, 716–717  
 in hair, 63
- Sulfites, in hair products, 63–65
- Sulfoacetates, as anionic surfactant, 491
- Sulfonated castor oil, in permanent waves, 700
- Sulfonated fatty acids, microbial growth in, 281
- Sulfonates, in skin cleansers, 492–493
- Sulfones, in permanent waves, 698
- Sulfonic acid  
 in shampoos, 606  
 in surfactants, 198–199
- Sulfosuccinates  
 in shampoos, 605  
 in surfactants, 199
- Sulfoxide, in permanent waves, 698
- Sulfur  
 in acne products, 465–466  
 as antioxidant, 255  
 in dandruff products, 408, 409, 411  
 in hair, 67  
 in masks, 477  
 volatile sulfur compounds in bad breath, neutralization of, 105
- Sulfuric acid esters  
 in surfactants, 199  
 in nail polishes, 575  
 in shampoos, 606
- Sulisobenzene in sunscreens, 417, 420, 423
- Sun protection factor (SPF) in sunscreens, 153, 416, 424, 425
- “Sunblock” (See Sunscreens)
- Sunburn and skin, 20, 23, 28–29
- Sunflower seed oil, 310, 516
- Sunlight  
 benefits, 27  
 detrimental effects, 28  
 effect on skin, 22–36  
 irradiation and color loss in hair, 68–69  
 penetration into skin, 24
- Sunscreens, 118, 142, 143, 165, 166, 415–435  
 absorption of UV radiations, 416–419  
 agents in, 416  
 aminobenzoic acid, 417, 420  
 avobenzene in, 417, 420  
 benzene ring and, 418  
 blockers of UV radiation in, 416, 419  
 botanicals as source of, 313  
 cationic lotion type, 434  
 cinoxate in, 417, 420  
 dioxybenzone in, 417, 420–421  
 efficacy of, 427  
 emulsions type, 428–430  
 ensulizole in, 417, 422  
 E.U. regulation of, 155  
 evaluation of, 426–427  
 expiration dating, 425  
 FDA regulation of O.T.C. drugs, 416  
 formulations for, 427–434  
 gel type, 430  
 homosalate in, 417, 420, 421  
 labeling of, 424, 425  
 lip balm stick, 433  
 meradimate in, 417, 421  
 minimum erythema dose (MED) parameters for, 424  
 mousse/aerosol type, 431, 433  
 octinoxate in, 417, 420, 421  
 octisalate in, 417, 420, 421  
 octocrylene in, 417, 420, 421  
 oil type, 431, 433  
 oil-in-water emulsions, 428–429  
 ointment type, 431  
 oxybenzone in, 417, 420, 422  
 PABA in, 422, 425, 427  
 padimate O in, 417, 422  
 photostability testing of, 426  
 presentation of, 428  
 prototype formulation for, 433, 434 (*t*)  
 pump spray type, 431  
 safety of, 427  
 solubility parameter for, 419  
 stick type, 431  
 sulisobenzene in, 417, 420, 423  
 sun protection factor (SPF) in, 416, 424, 425  
 “sunblock,” 425  
 suntanning products vs., 425  
 titanium dioxide in, 416, 417, 419, 423

- trolamine salicylate in, 417, 420, 423  
 ultraviolet (UV) radiation and, 32  
 U.S. regulation and, 145, 424–427  
 UV absorbers in, 393  
 water resistance of, 425, 432, 434  
 water-in-oil emulsions, 428–429  
 zinc oxide in, 416, 417, 419, 423–424  
 Suntan accelerators, 136  
 Suntan lotion, 131, 166, 425  
 Superamides in shampoos, 606  
 Superfatted (free fatty acid) soaps, 487  
 Superoxide anion, 35, 249, 250, 256  
 Suppository fills, 844–845  
 Surface properties of hair, 57–61  
 Surface tension and microbial growth, 282  
 Surface tension and surfactants, 189, 194  
 Surface treated pigments in foundation makeups, 529–530  
 Surface-active agents and preservatives, 292  
 Surfactants, 187–210, 187, 486, 487, 689, 814–815  
   acid hydrolysis by, 192  
   acyl isethionates, 605  
   acylated amino acids in, 197  
   acylated peptides in, 197  
   acylglyceride sulfonates in, 199  
   adsorption in, 192, 193  
   aggregation structures in, 191  
   alcohol in, 199, 200, 203, 206  
   alkanoic acids in, 197–198  
   alkanolamides in, 195, 203–204  
   alkoxylated amines in, 201  
   alkyl ether sulfates in, 199, 200, 602–604  
   alkyl glucosides in, 207, 494  
   alkyl substituted amino acids in, 196  
   alkyl sulfates in, 192, 199–200, 602–604  
   alkylamido alkyl amines in, 196  
   alkylamines in, 201  
   alkylaryl sulfonates in, 198, 199  
   alkylether sulfonates in, 199  
   alkylimidazolines in, 201  
   alkyl-substituted amino acids in, 609  
   alpha-olefin sulfonates (AOS) in, 604  
   amides in, 203  
   amines in, 199, 201  
   amine oxides in, 204, 494  
   ammonium chloride in, 201  
   amphiphilic content of, 208  
   amphiphilic surfactants, 187, 188, 189, 493, 608–609  
   amphoteric surfactants, 195, 196  
   anionic surfactants, 191–192, 195, 196–200, 208, 490–483, 602–606  
   antimicrobial action in, 193, 201–202  
   associative structures in, 191  
   benzalkonium chloride in, 201  
   betaines in, 202, 608–609  
   capillary flow and, 193–194  
   carbohydrate esters in, 205–206  
   carboxylic acids in, 197–198, 206  
   categories of, 195  
   cationic surfactants, 195, 200–202, 208, 292, 609  
   cetyl alcohol in, 206  
   chemistry of, 195–207  
   chloroacetic acid in, 202  
   cocamidopropyl in, 201  
   cocamidopropylamine oxide, 204  
   cream rinses using, 201  
   critical micelle concentration (CMC) and, 189–189, 292, 603, 612–613  
   dimethylamine in, 201  
   dimonium chloride in, 201  
   drug permeation action enhanced by, 208  
   emulsions using, 192, 213, 216, 217 (*t*), 218, 223, 232  
   entropic contributions to micellization, 191  
   esteramides in, 204  
   esters in, 204–206  
   ethers in, 206–207  
   ethoxylated alcohols in, 206  
   ethoxylated carboxylic acids in, 206  
   ethoxylated glycerides in, 205  
   ethoxylated materials in, 202  
   ethoxylated polypropylene oxide in, 206–207  
   ethoxylated polysiloxanes in, 207  
   ethoxylated PPG-5 in, 207  
   ethylene oxide in, 201  
   fatty acids in, 197, 198, 203  
   fatty alkanolamides in, 606–607  
   fatty glyceryl ether sulfonates, 606  
   foam formation in, 194–195  
   functions performed by, 188, 195  
   Gibbs adsorption equation for, 188–189, 191, 193, 216  
   glucosides in, 207  
   glycerides in, 204–205  
   glyceryl stearate in, 204  
   Guerbet alcohol reaction in, 203  
   hair colorants/dyes, 689  
   hexadecanoic acid in, 198  
   hydrogen bonding in, 202–203  
   hydrophile-lipophile balance (HLB) and, 292  
   hydrophilic content in, 187, 188, 189  
   hydrophobic content in, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193  
   inositol in, 200  
   ionic polymers and, 193  
   ionic surfactants and, 193  
   irritation caused by, 191–192, 208–209  
   isethionates in, 198  
   isethionic acids in, 198  
   Kritchevsky condensate and, 203  
   lactylates in, 198

- Surfactants (*cont.*)
- lauramidopropyl
    - dimethylamine in, 202
  - lauryl alcohol in, 199
  - lime soaps, 204
  - linear alkylbenzene sulfonates (LAS), 605
  - liquid crystal surfactants, 192
  - macroemulsions using, 192
  - magnesium stearate in, 198
  - maleic anhydride in, 199
  - in masks, 477, 478
  - micellar catalysis in, 192
  - micelle formation by, 189–192, **190**
  - microbial growth in, 280, 281
  - mixed micelle formation in, 191–192
  - monoglyceride sulfate, 606
  - monoglycerides in, 204–205
  - in mouthwashes, 747
  - Newton's rings phenomenon and, 187
  - nonionic polymers and, 193
  - nonionic surfactants and, 191–193, 195, 202–208, 292, 494, 606–608
  - octadecanoic acid in, 198
  - olefin sulfonates in, 199
  - olive oil PEG-6 esters in, 205
  - Oxo alcohol in, 199, 203
  - packing parameters (P) in, 191
  - patch test performance data for, 207 (*t*)
  - phospholipids in, 200
  - phosphoric acid esters in, 200
  - phosphoric acid triesters in, 206
  - physical characteristics of, 189–195
  - poloxamers in, 207, 494
  - polyalkoxylated ether
    - glycolates, 606
  - polyethoxylated materials in, 202–203
  - polyglyceryl esters in, 205
  - polyphosphoric acid in, 200
  - preformed polyethylene glycol (PEG) in, 206
  - preservatives and, 292, 294 (*t*)
  - propoxylate polysiloxanes in, 207
  - pyrrolidone in, 203
  - quaternaries in, 201–202, 493–494
  - rheological additive, 235
  - roll-back mechanism in, 611–612, **612**
  - saccharides in, 205–206
  - safe use of, 208–209
  - sarcosinates in, 197
  - sebum cleaning by, 614–616
  - in shaving preparations, 503–504, 506, 511
  - in skin care products, 362, 487–489
  - in soap, 188, 198, 292
  - sodium stearate in, 198
  - solid-liquid interface and
    - action of, 193–194
  - solubilization of soils by, 612–613
  - sorbitan esters in, 205
  - spreading coefficient and, 194
  - stearalkonium chloride in, 201
  - stearic acid in, 198
  - sulfonic acids in, 198–199
  - sulfosuccinates in, 199, 605
  - sulfuric acid esters in, 199
  - surface tension and, 189, 194
  - surface-active agents and, 292
  - synthetic surfactants vs. soap in, 487–489
  - taurates in, 198
  - tetraalkylammonium salts in, 201
  - triglycerides in, 204–205
  - van der Waals interactions in, 193
  - wetting action of, 193–194
  - Young's equation for
    - interfacial tension and, 194
  - Ziegler alcohol in, 199, 203
  - zinc laurate in, 198
- Surgical hand scrub antiseptics, 405, 406–407
- Suspension agents in
  - antiperspirants and deodorants, 451
- Suspension of ingredients and rheological additives, 235
- Suspension of solids, 829–830
- Suspensions and rheological additive, 240
- Suspensions, 118–119
- Sweat (*See* Perspiration physiology)
- Sweat gland in skin, **4**, 11–12
- Sweet almond oil, 310
- Sweeteners
  - in mouthwashes, 747
  - in toothpastes, 734
- Synthetic lipid, 323
- T suppressor cells, UV-mediated immunosuppression and, 32
- Talc, 120, 527–528
  - in acne products, 464
  - in after-shave products, 520
  - in antiperspirants/deodorants, 452
  - in blushers, 561
  - as contamination source, 277
  - in eyeshadows, 570, 571
  - in foundation makeups, 524–525, 529, 531, 533, 534, 536, 537, 539, 540, 541, 542
  - in lipsticks, 547
  - in masks, 482
  - in nail white, 595–596
  - particle size of, 853
  - preservative action on, 294
  - in shaving preparations, 504, 514
- Tallow, 329–330
- Tallow alcohol, 499
- Tallowtrimonium chloride, 655
- Tamper-evident packaging and, 140
- Tangential flow, 802, **803**
- Tanning of skin, 23, 29–31, 35–36, 397–398, 415
- Tanning preparations, 131, 136
- Tartar deposits on teeth, 93, 96
- Tartaric acid, 294, 592
- Taurates in surfactants, 198
- TEA (*See* Triethanolamine)
- TEA laureth sulfate
  - in cuticle removers, 589
  - in shaving preparations, 509
  - in skin cleansers, 497
- TEA oleate, 497
- TEA soaps, 503
- TEA stearate
  - in nail strengtheners, 594
  - in shaving preparations, 505

- Tea tree oil, 312, 315
- Tear drainage in ocular tissues and eyes, 80, 81
- Tear layer of ocular tissues and eyes, 83
- Teeth (*See* Mouth, teeth, and oral care)
- Telangiectasias, 22, 33, 34
- Telogen effluvium, 44
- Telogen (resting) phase of growth in hair, 41–42, 42
- Temperature and microbial growth, 282
- Temperature effect on antioxidants, 249
- emulsions, 213, 223, 224, 230, 231, 815–816
- moisture absorption by skin, 352–353
- permanent waves, 707
- rheological additive, 241
- stability, 890, 892, 896
- Temporary hair coloring, 670, 674–675
- Tensile properties of hair, 50–53
- Terminal differentiation in skin, 7–10, 8
- Test batches for new product development, 125
- Testing, 125, 159, 161–162
- of aerosol container stability, 347
- of comedogenicity of acne products, 462, 463 (*t*)
- of contaminations, 279
- of deodorancy of antiperspirants and deodorants, 447
- of efficacy of skin moisturizers, 269
- of mildness of skin cleansers, 488–489
- of mouthwashes, 752–753
- of packaging, 886–888
- of permeation of packaging, 887–888
- of photostability testing of sunscreens, 426
- of preservatives efficacy, 297–298
- rheological additives, 242–243
- sweat measurement protocols for, 444–446
- of toothpastes, 739–742
- Tetraalkylammonium salts in surfactants, 201
- Tetrapotassium pyrophosphate toothpaste, 736
- Tetrasodium EDTA
- in cuticle removers, 591
- in hair setting/styling products, 665
- in nail strengtheners, 595
- in skin cleansers, 497, 499
- Tetrasodium pyrophosphate, 749–750
- in cuticle removers, 589
- in mouthwashes, 749–751
- in toothpastes, 736
- Thermal stability and rheological additive, 235
- Thermoforming, 881
- Thermoplastic resins packaging, 878
- Thermosetting resins, 880
- Thickeners
- botanicals as sources of, 311
- emulsions, 222, 229
- rheological additive, 235
- shampoo, 623
- shaving preparations, 505
- skin care products, 362
- toothpaste, 726, 732
- Thickness testing, 775
- Thinning of viscosity, 803
- Thiodiglycol depilatories, 721
- Thiodipropionic acid as antioxidants, 256
- Thioesters in hair, 46, 61, 63–64
- Thioglycerol, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Thioglycolates, in depilatories, 718, 720
- Thioglycolic acid, 705, 706
- as antioxidant, 256
- in depilatories, 721
- in permanent waves, 697, 702–704
- Thiolactic acid, in depilatories, 720, 721
- Thiols, 63, 65–66
- in permanent waves, 696–698
- Thiomalic acid, in depilatories, 721
- Thiosulfate, in hair, 64–65
- Thiourea, in permanent waves, 704
- Third molar (wisdom teeth), 88
- Thixotropic materials as rheological additive, 237–238, 237, 242–243, 795
- Three-roll mills, 835–836, 836
- Thyme oil, 315
- Thymol
- in over-the-counter remedies, 404
- in toothpastes, 737
- Titanium dioxide, 118, 120
- in after-shave products, 520
- in blushers, 561
- in eyeshadows, 571
- in hair setting/styling products, 665
- in hair straighteners, 712
- in lipsticks, 543, 545–547
- in makeups, 524, 525, 529, 531, 532, 533, 534, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542
- in mascaras, 563
- in masks, 482
- in nail white, 595–596
- particle size of, 853
- preservative action on, 294
- in sunscreens, 416, 417, 419, 423
- in toothpastes, 735
- Tocopherol, 306, 368
- as antioxidant, 252, 253, 312
- in shampoos, 623
- Tocopheryl acetate
- in lipsticks, 551
- in nail strengtheners, 595
- Toilet water, 131
- Toluene in nail polishes, 578–579, 584
- Tonics, 131, 636
- Toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743
- Toothpaste and dentifrices, 96, 104, 105, 119, 142, 144, 151, 164, 725–738
- abrasives in, 726, 728–730, 740–741
- active ingredients in, 727
- alumina, 730



- Toothpaste and dentifrices**  
*(cont.)*  
 aluminum hydroxide, 730  
 anticalculus agents in, 736  
 anticaries active ingredients, 735  
 antimicrobials in, 727, 736  
 bleaches in, 735  
 breath freshening properties of, 742  
 calcium carbonate, 729  
 calcium peroxide, 730  
 calcium pyrophosphate (CP), 729  
 carbomer, 733  
 carrageenan, 732  
 cellulose gum, 732  
 cetylpyridinium chloride, 737  
 chalk, 729  
 chlorhexidine, 737  
 clays, 733  
 cleaning properties of, 742  
 clinical trials for, 742  
 colorants for, 726, 735  
 corrosion inhibitors in, 734–735  
 demineralization by, 742  
 desensitizing agents in, 736  
 detergents in, 730–731  
 dicalcium phosphate  
   anhydrous (DCP-A), 729  
 dicalcium phosphate dihydrate (DCP-D), 729  
 disodium pyrophosphate, 736  
 enzymes in, 737  
 flavoring in, 726, 733–734  
 fluoride, 729, 735–736  
 formulations for, 737  
 gellan gum, 733  
 gelling agents in, 726  
 glycerin in, 731  
 guar gum, 733  
 gums, 732, 733  
 humectants in, 726, 731–732  
 hydrated silica in, 728–729, 733  
 hydrogen peroxide in, 735  
 hydrogenated starch hydrolysate, 731  
 hydroxyethylcellulose, 733  
 hydroxypropyl guar, 733  
 hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, 733
- ingredients in, 726–737  
 insoluble sodium phosphate (IMP), 730  
 luster (gloss or polish), 741  
 magnesium aluminum silicate, 733  
 manufacture of, 737–738  
 parabens in, 734  
 performance, 740  
 phenolics, 737  
 poloxamer 407, 731  
 polyethylene glycol, 732  
 potassium acesulfame in, 734  
 potassium sorbate in, 734  
 preservatives in, 727, 734  
 product dispensing parameters for, 727  
 propylene glycol, 732  
 remineralization by, 742  
 requirements of, 725  
 saccharin for, 734  
 safety, 740  
 sanguinaria extract, 737  
 sodium benzoate in, 734  
 sodium bicarbonate, 730  
 sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (SCMS), 732–733  
 sodium fluoride, 736  
 sodium lauryl sarcosinate, 731  
 sodium lauryl sulfoacetate, 731  
 sodium laurylsulfate (SLS), 730–731  
 sodium magnesium silicate, 733  
 sodium metaphosphate, 730  
 sodium methyl cocoyl taurate, 731  
 sodium monofluorophosphate, 736  
 sodium silicate in, 734–735  
 sorbitol in, 731  
 stability of, 726  
 stannous fluoride, 736, 737  
 sweeteners for, 734  
 testing, 739–742, 739  
 tetrapotassium pyrophosphate, 736  
 tetrasodium pyrophosphate, 736  
 thickening agents in, 726, 732  
 titanium dioxide in, 735
- toothbrushes and brushing, 742–743, 742  
 toothpastes, 725–738, 725  
 tragacanth gum, 732  
 tricalcium phosphate (TCP), 729  
 triclosan in, 736  
 urea peroxide in, 735  
 viscosity of, 727  
 water in, 731  
 xanthan gum, 733  
 xylitol, 732  
 zinc chloride in, 736  
 zinc citrate in, 736
- Toothpowders, 738–739**  
**Topical or cutaneous drug**  
 absorption through, 17, 22, 352, 354, 368  
**Torsion properties of hair, 50, 56–57**  
**Tosylamide/formaldehyde resin (TSFR) nail polish, 577**  
**Towelette cleaners, 500**  
**Toxic compounds, 147**  
**Toxic epidermal necrolysis, 17**  
**Toxic reactions in ocular tissues and eyes, 84–85**  
**Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) and preservatives, 285**  
**Toxic substances, E.U. regulation of, 154**  
**Toxicity of preservatives, 300–301**  
**Trace metal content of, 49**  
**Trade secret ingredients, 175–183**  
 U.S. regulation and, 139  
**Trade-Related Aspects of Intellect. Prop. Law (TRIPs), 177, 180**  
**Tragacanth gum, 311**  
 as contamination source, 277  
 in hair setting/styling products, 644  
 in masks, 481  
 rheological properties of, 244  
 in toothpastes, 732  
**Transepidermal water loss (TEWL), 262–268, 324, 325, 367, 374, 763**  
 evaporimetry testing and, 775  
 petrolatum and, 326–327  
**Transesterification, 897**

- Transforming growth factor (TGF), 15
- Transglutaminase in skin, 9
- Transparency of cornea in eyes, 84
- Transparent emulsions, 212, 230
- Trauma to nails, 75
- Tretinoin, in acne products, 468
- Trialkanolamines, 151
- Tricalcium phosphate (TCP), in toothpastes, 729
- Trichorrhexis nodosa, 43
- Triclocarban in skin cleansers, 496
- Triclosan, 144–145  
 in acne products, 467  
 in antiperspirants/deodorants, 455, 456  
 in mouthwashes, 748  
 in over-the-counter remedies, 407  
 preventive of gingivitis in oral care, 100  
 in shaving preparations, 508  
 in skin cleansers, 496  
 in toothpastes, 736
- Tricontanyl PVP, 664
- Tridecyl trimellitate, 548
- Triethanolamine (TEA), 134, 138, 151, 377  
 in foundation makeups, 533  
 in mascaras, 564  
 in setting/styling products, 649  
 in skin cleansers, 498  
 in skin care, 371, 372, 374, 382
- Triethanolamine titanate, 699
- Triethanolamine-stearate (TEA), 533
- Triethylhexanoin, 375, 377
- Triglycerides, 329–460, 461  
 botanicals as source of, 308  
 in emulsions, 280  
 as lipid, 329–330, 329  
 in moisturizers, 264  
 in shampoos, 615  
 in skin, 13  
 in surfactants, 204–205, 204
- Trihydroxymethyl phosphine, 63
- Trihydroxystearin  
 as rheological additive, 243, 245  
 in skin cleansers, 498
- Triisocetyl citrate, 548
- Triisopropanolamine, 659
- Triisostearyl, 548
- Trilinoleate, 548
- Trimellitic anhydride, 577
- Trimer esters, 548
- Trimethylglycine, 608
- Tripalmitolein, 265
- Trisodium phosphate, 589
- Trolamine salicylate, in sunscreens, 417, 420, 423
- Trolox as antioxidant, 252
- Tryptase, in skin, 15
- Tryptophan in hair, 67, 68
- Tubes, collapsible, 881–882
- Tumor necrosis factor (TNF), 15, 29
- Tunicamycin, 397
- Turbine impellers, 787
- Turmeric, 316, 318
- Turnover point in hair, 51–53
- Two-in-one (shampoo/conditioner) products, 601, 602, 626
- Two-way type cleansing creams, 372–374
- Type I oxidative reactions, 247–249
- Type II oxidative reactions, 250–251
- Tyrosinase inhibitor, 397
- Tyrosine in hair, 47, 67, 68
- Ultrafine emulsions, 230
- Ultramarine blue, 529, 546, 571
- Ultrasonic homogenizer, 805, 823
- Ultrasonifiers in emulsions, 223
- Ultrastructure of nails, 73
- Ultraviolet filters, E.U.  
 regulation of, 151, 153
- Ultraviolet radiation, 11, 12, 15, 22–36, 310, 898  
 absorbers of, botanical sources of, 313  
 absorption of, 416–419  
 acne and, 461  
 actinic keratoses and, 33  
 action spectrum of light in skin, 24–25, 25  
 acute adverse effects of, 28  
 antioxidants, 247–248, 250, 256  
 atrophy of skin and, 33, 34  
 avobenzone UV absorber, 142  
 basal cell carcinoma, 28  
 beneficial effects of, 27  
 beta carotene in, 24  
 bilirubin in, 24  
 biological effectiveness of, 25–27  
 blockers of, 416, 419  
 carcinomas, 28  
 cataracts, 28  
 chromophores and, 23  
 chronic adverse effects of, 28  
 chronic effects on skin of exposure to, 33–34  
 coarsening of skin and, 33, 34  
 collagen and, 34  
 cutaneous malignant melanoma and, 33  
 dehydrocholesterol (pro-vitamin D3) in, 23  
 diseases of skin and, 35  
 distribution of solar UV radiations, 26 (t)  
 DNA absorption of, 28, 31, 33  
 elastin and, 34  
 energy constant (Planck's constant) of light, 24  
 erythema in, 23–29, 25  
 fibronectin and, 34  
 freckles and, 33, 34  
 hair and, 68–69  
 hemoglobin and, 23, 24  
 hyperkeratotic lesions and, 33  
 immunosuppression and, 28, 32  
 keratinocytes in, 29–31  
 laxness of skin and, 33, 34  
 lentigo maligna, 28  
 malignancies and, 28, 32–33  
 melanin in, 23, 29–31, 35–36  
 melanomas and, 28, 33  
 melanosomes in, 29–31  
 minimum erythema dose (MED) for, 26  
 neomelanogenesis in, 25  
 neoplastms in, 33, 34

- Ultraviolet radiation (*cont.*)  
 nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH) in, 23  
 nonmelanoma skin cancers (NMSC) and, 33  
 ozone layer and, 26  
 penetration of light into skin, 24  
 photoaging and, 28, 33–34  
 photoallergic responses, 28  
 photocarcinogenesis and, 26, 32–33  
 photodamage, 28  
 photodermatoses and, 28, 35  
 photosensitivity and, 28, 35  
 pigmentation in, 29–31  
 porphyrins in, 24  
 properties of light, 23–24  
 protection from, 27  
 protective skin mechanisms vs., 35–36  
 proteins and, 23  
 proteoglycans and, 34  
 range of UV radiations, A, B, C, 23  
 reversal of photoaging and, 34  
 skin types, and genetic response to UV, 31–32  
 solar keratoses, 28  
 solar lentigos (age spots/liverspots), 33, 34  
 squamous cell carcinoma, 28  
 styling gel with UV screen, 649  
 sunburn and, 23, 28–29  
 sunscreen (*See* Sunscreens)  
 tanning and, 29–31, 35–36  
 telangiectasias, 33, 34  
 urocanic acid in, 24, 36  
 UVB-induced pigmentation mechanism in, 397–398  
 wavelengths of, 416–418  
 wrinkling and, 33, 34, 378
- Under-the-cup filling process for aerosols, 343
- Unit operations, 787–788
- United States cosmetic regulation  
 acne products, 465  
 adulteration in, 132–133  
 advertising practices and, 146  
 alpha hydroxy acid, 132, 138  
 animal rights and, 129  
 antiperspirants and deodorants, 441–442  
 banned substances, 150  
 bleaches, skin bleaches, 394–396  
 burden of regulations on cosmetics in, 132, 134  
 carcinogenic compounds, 147  
 categories of products considered cosmetics, 131  
 classification by intended use vs. chemical composition in, 132  
 COLIPA, 129, 130  
 color additives, 135–136  
 cosmeceuticals, 149  
 Cosmetic Ingredient Review (CIR) program, 134, 138  
 Cosmetic Toiletry and Fragrance Association (CTFA), 129, 138  
 Cosmetics and Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 146  
 country of origin in labeling, 140  
 defining cosmetics vs. drugs, 130–131, 140–142, 393–394  
 depilatories in, 134–135  
 enforcement of, 130  
 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and, 147  
 estrogenic hormones, 135  
 European Cosmetic Toiletry and Perfumery Association (COLIPA), 130  
 European Union (E.U.) and, 129, 147–162  
 excluded substances, 152  
 expiration dating in labeling, 140  
 Fair Packaging and Labeling Act (FPLA), 132  
 FDA Modernization Act of 1997, 133  
 Federal Trade Commission (FTC) and, 146  
 Federal Trade Commission Act (FTCA) and, 146  
 Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and, 130–138  
 Food Drug and Cosmetic Act (FDCA), 130, 133  
 foundation makeup, 523  
 globalization of industry and, 129  
 Good manufacturing practices (GMP) and related issues, 137, 160, 161  
 hair dyes, 136, 686–687  
 hair straighteners in, 134–135  
 hazardous substances in, 134, 138  
 Homeopathic Pharmacopoeia and, defining drugs, 131  
 hypoallergenicity in labeling, 140  
 identification of products in labeling, 139  
 industry response/compliance with, 137–138  
 ingredient listing in labeling, 139  
 inspections, 133  
 International Conference on Harmonization (ICH), 145–146  
 International Fragrance Research Institute (IFRA), 138  
 International Nomenclature Cosmetic Ingredients, 145  
 JCIA, 129  
 labeling, 130, 132, 138–140  
 lipstick colorants, 544  
 manufacturer name and address in labeling, 139  
 microbial contaminants in, 136–137  
 misbranded defined, 132–133  
 nail products and, 135  
 National Formulary and defining drugs, 131  
 National Institutes of Health (NIH) and, 138  
 National Toxicology Program (NTP) and, 138  
 net contents (English/metric) in labeling, 139  
 non-U.S. manufacturers and, 137  
 over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, 140–144, 393–394  
 packaging, 132

- permanent wave neutralizers  
   and, 135  
 photosensitization of products  
   and, 130  
 placental extracts, 135  
 preservatives in, 136–137,  
   295  
 Product information package  
   (PIP), 159–160  
 products of specific concerns,  
   134–135  
 prohibited and hazardous  
   substances in, 134, 138  
 racial factors in, 129  
 restricted substances, 151  
 safety of finished products,  
   155, 156  
 safety factors in, 129, 130,  
   134, 138, 765–766  
 soaps, 398–401  
 state regulation of cosmetics  
   in U.S., 146–147  
 sunscreen products, 416,  
   424–427  
 tamper-evident packaging and,  
   140  
 toxic compounds, 147  
 toxicology, 154  
 trade secret ingredients in, 139  
 triclosan use, 407  
 United States Pharmacopoeia  
   and, defining drugs, 131  
 violations of, 133  
 vitamins, 135  
 voluntary reporting program,  
   134  
 warnings on label, 139–140  
 wrinkle removers, 141  
 United States Pharmacopoeia  
   (USP), 131, 297, 298  
 Unsaturated vs. polyunsaturated  
   materials in antioxidants,  
   258  
 Urea, 705, 706  
   in hair straighteners, 713  
   as humectant, 365  
   as hygroscopic agent, 267  
   as natural moisturizing factor  
   (NMF), 267  
   in toothpastes, 735  
   in skin cleansers, 497  
   in skin care, 384  
 Uric acid, as natural  
   moisturizing factor (NMF),  
   267  
 Urocanic acid in ultraviolet  
   (UV) radiation, 24, 36  
 UV absorbers in 623–624, 641  
 VA hair setting/styling products,  
   660  
 Vacuum processing of lipsticks,  
   557  
 Valves for aerosols, 336–338,  
   **337**  
 Van der Waals interactions, 119,  
   193, 217, 617  
 Vanishing creams, 360, 379–382  
 Vascular cell adhesion molecules  
   (VCAM), ultraviolet (UV)  
   radiation and, 29  
 Vasculature of skin, 19, 22  
 Vater-Pacini corpuscles in skin,  
   19  
 Vegetable hair dyes, 691  
 Vegetable oils  
   in emulsions, 211  
   in shampoos, 623  
   in shaving preparations, 505  
 Vellus hair, 41  
 Velocity head, 807, **808**  
 Vessel shape on mixing, 810  
 Vinyl acetate, 577, 619  
 Vinyl chloride, 134, 577  
 Vinyl esters, 577  
 Vinyl neodecanoate, 660  
 Vinyl or peelable facial masks,  
   480, **481**  
 Violations of U.S. regulations,  
   133  
 Visco-elastic properties in  
   rheological additives, 238  
 Viscosity, 792, 793, 794, 795,  
   810–811  
   common substances, 236 (*t*)  
   of emulsions, 117, 118, 222,  
   225, 228, 229, 231  
   of hair setting/styling  
   products, 646–650  
   of skin care products, 359  
   low-viscosity products, filling  
   processes for, 837–838  
   of masks, 478  
   of mouthwashes, 745  
   of nail polishes, 576, 579, 582  
   rheological additives and, 235,  
   236, 238–239  
   of shampoos, 601, 609,  
   622–623  
   of toothpastes, 727  
 Vitamin A, 368, 378  
   in acne products, 468  
   in hair setting/styling  
   products, 641  
   in skin care, 379  
 Vitamin B, 368, 641  
 Vitamin C in collagen synthesis,  
   18  
 Vitamin D, 368  
   from exposure to sunlight, 27  
   in skin care, 384  
 Vitamin E, 252, 384, 368, 641  
 Vitamins  
   in hair setting/styling  
   products, 641  
   in nail polishes, 582  
   regulation of, 135  
   in shampoos, 601–602  
   in skin care products, 368,  
   388  
   topical application of skin,  
   368  
 Vitreous body of eyes, **80**  
 Volatile organic compounds  
   (VOC), 507, 510, 515, 655,  
   657  
 Volatile sulfur compounds in  
   bad breath, neutralization  
   of, 105  
 Voluntary reporting program,  
   U.S. regulation and, 134  
 Warm fills, 841–843  
 Warnings on label, 139–140,  
   157  
 Wart removers, 412–413  
 Wash-off cleansing creams,  
   372–374  
 Water, 116, 117, 121, 378  
   as contamination source, 277  
   effect on hair, 62  
   microbial growth in, 280, 281  
   rheological properties of, 236  
 Water absorption by hair, **54, 55**  
 Water absorption by skin, 352  
 Water loss from skin, 9, 10, 16,  
   17, 261–263, 351–352

- Water phase components of in skin care products, 362
- Water-based foundation makeup, 526, 530, 535-538
- Water-based mascara, 565
- Water-based systems in rheological additives, 243, 244
- Water-in-oil (W/O) emulsions, 212, 216, 220, 222, 228-229, 229, 280, 361, 535-538, 565  
in skin care products, 370, 371, 374, 376, 380  
in sunscreens, 428-429
- Water-in-oil-in-water (W/O/W) emulsions, 213, 382, 384
- Water-in-silicone emulsion, 453, 535-536, 824-825
- Waterproof mascara, 564, 565
- Wavelengths of UV radiations, 416-418
- Wax esters, 460, 461  
in skin, 13
- Wax type facial masks, 472, 478-479
- Waxes, 118, 119  
botanicals as source of, 308  
as contamination source, 277  
in depilatories, 713-714  
in foundation makeups, 530, 533, 542, 543  
in hair setting/styling products, 648  
in lipsticks, 548, 549, 557  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
in masks, 478  
as rheological additive, 235, 241, 242  
in skin care products, 370, 371
- Wet continuous process, 865-870, 866
- Wet earth treatments as masks, 471
- Wet mixing systems, 801-802
- Wet-set hair products, 642-643
- Wettability of hair, 50, 54, 57-58, 58, 68
- Wetting action of surfactants, 193-194
- Wetting agents  
in foundation makeups, 535
- in hair setting/styling products, 639
- Wheat germ glycerides, 452
- Wheat germ oil, 310
- Wheat gluten, 306
- White petrolatum, in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403
- Whitening of nails, 76
- Whitening of tooth, 103
- Wipe-off skin cleansing creams, 370-372
- Wisdom teeth, 88
- Witch hazel, 315, 320, 412  
in after-shave products, 516, 517  
in shaving preparations, 513
- Wood powder, 306
- Worldwide patent system, 177-178
- Wormwood, 317
- Wrinkle removers, 141
- Wrinkles in skin, 21-22, 33, 34, 262, 377-379
- Written product profiles in new product developments, 122, 126-127
- Xanthan gum  
in acne products, 467  
in after-shave products, 518  
in emulsions, 226  
in foundation makeups, 535  
in hair setting/styling products, 644  
in masks, 477, 481  
in mouthwashes, 750, 751  
rheological properties of, 244  
in shaving preparations, 503, 505  
in toothpastes, 733
- Xanthines as antioxidants, 256
- Xanthophyll, 318
- Xerostomia, 105-106
- Xylene nail polish, 578
- Xylitol  
as hygroscopic agent, 267  
in mouthwashes, 747  
in toothpastes, 732
- Yeast infections of nails, 75
- Yeasts as contaminant, 274-276, 283, 284
- Yellow nail syndrome in nails, 74, 77
- Yield point of hair, 51, 53
- Yield values in rheological additives, 236
- Young-Dupre equation and wettability of hair, 58
- Young's equation for interfacial tension and surfactants, 194
- Ziegler alcohol for surfactants, 199, 203
- Zinc, in hair, 49
- Zinc acetate, 402, 403, 594
- Zinc carbonate, 402, 403
- Zinc chloride, 736
- Zinc citrate, 736
- Zinc laurate, 198
- Zinc oxide, 118  
in after-shave products, 520  
in foundation makeups, 524, 525-526, 538, 542  
in masks, 482  
in nail white, 595-596  
in over-the-counter remedies, 402, 403  
preservative action on, 294  
in shaving preparations, 514  
in sunscreens, 416, 417, 419, 423-424
- Zinc peroxide, 592
- Zinc phenosulfonate, 513
- Zinc pyrithione, 408, 409, 410, 411
- Zinc salts  
in after-shave products, 517  
in mouthwashes, 749  
in toothpastes and oral care, 96
- Zinc stearate  
in eyeshadows, 570  
in foundation makeups, 538, 539  
in mascaras, 565, 566  
particle size, 853  
in shaving preparations, 514
- Zirconium chloride, 594
- Zirconium salt, 134, 699
- Zwitterionic betaine, 311